## UNIT-1

## ICs and OP-AMPs

## Introduction to Integrated Circuits (ICs):

## Integrated Circuit (IC):

IC is a miniature and low-costelectronic circuit consisting of active devices (Diodes, Transistors and Op-Amps), passive components (Resistors and Capacitors), joined together on a single crystal silicon chip.

## Advantages of ICs over discrete circuits:

- Small size
- Low cost
- High reliability
- High performance
- High speed
- Low power consumption
- Matched devices


## CLASSIFICATION OF ICS

## 1. Linear ICs, Digital ICs and Mixed-Signal ICs

Based on mode of operation, ICs are classified as Linear ICs, Digital ICs and Mixed-Signal ICs.
(a) Linear ICs:They are also called analog ICs. They are used to process analog signals.They are used to implement discrete circuitslike amplifiers, oscillators and filters. The basic building block of analog ICs is an operational amplifier.
(b) Digital ICs:They operate on digital signals (e.g.: Binary numbers). They are used to implement logic circuits like logic gates, counters, microprocessors, etc.
(c) Mixed-signal ICs: These are designed to process combinations of analog and digital signals. These are the most complex to design. These ICs are designed for applications like ADCs, DACs, cell phones, etc.

## 2. Monolithic ICs and Hybrid ICs:

Based on the method of fabrication, ICs are classified as monolithic ICs and Hybrid ICs
Monolithic ICs:

In monolithic ICs, all active and passive components are fabricated on a single silicon chip. Most of the ICs are monolithic.

Note: In Greek language, 'mono' means single and 'lithos' means stone.
Advantages of monolithic ICs:
$\checkmark$ Low cost
$\checkmark$ Thermal stability
Disadvantages:
$>$ Large values of resistances and capacitances cannot be formed. But such large values are needed in some linear circuits.
$>$ There is no method available to fabricate transformers and large values of inductors.

## Hybrid ICs:

In hybrid ICs, passive components ( $\mathrm{R} \& \mathrm{C}$ ) and the interconnections between them are formed on an insulating substrate (e.g.: Glass, Ceramic). Active components and monolithic ICs are then connected to form a complete circuit.

Based on the fabrication process, hybrid ICs are further classified as Thin-film ICs (thickness is $50 \mathrm{~A}^{\circ}$ to $2500 \mathrm{~A}^{\circ}$ ) and Thick-film ICs(Thickness is $125000 \mathrm{~A}^{0}$ to $625000 \mathrm{~A}^{\circ}$ )

## IC Chip size and Circuit Complexity

IC Chip size: At present, smallest dimensions of ICs are in the order of 10 nanometers.
Example: 'Intel' is mass-producing transistors of 14 nanometers size.
IC Chip Complexity: Electronic device technology used vacuum tubes until 1950s. Transistor was invented in 1947. Then, semiconductor technology became popular. At the beginning of 1960s, the concept of ICs was introduced. Since then, the size and complexity of ICs have increased rapidly.

| $\begin{array}{l}\text { Level of } \\ \text { Integration }\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Number } \\ \text { of Gates } \\ \text { per Chip }\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Number of } \\ \text { Transistors } \\ \text { per chip }\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Time } \\ \text { Period }\end{array}$ | Applications |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\begin{array}{l}\text { Small Scale } \\ \text { Integration } \\ \text { (SSI) }\end{array}$ | 3 to 30 | 10 to 100 | $\begin{array}{l}1960- \\ 1965\end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Used to make } \\ \text { Logic gates and } \\ \text { Flipflops }\end{array}$ |
| $\begin{array}{l}\text { Medium } \\ \text { Scale }\end{array}$ | 30 to 300 | 100 to 1000 | $\begin{array}{l}1965- \\ \text { Integration } \\ \text { (MSI) }\end{array}$ |  | \(\left.\begin{array}{l}Used to make <br>

Counters, <br>
Multiplexers, <br>

Adders. etc.\end{array}\right]\)| Large Scale | 300 to | 1000 to |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| Integration <br> (LSI) | 3000 | 20,000 | 1980 | RAM, ROM, and <br> 8-bit <br> Microprocessors. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Very <br> LargeScale <br> Integration <br> (VLSI) | $>3000$ | 20,000 to <br> $10^{6}$ | $1980-$ <br> 1990 | 16- and 32-bit <br> Microprocessors. |
| Ultra <br> LargeScale <br> Integration <br> (ULSI) | - | $10^{6}$ to $10^{7}$ | $1990-$ <br> 2000 | 64-bit <br> Microprocessors, <br> Virtual Reality <br> Machines, Smart <br> Sensors. |
| Giant Scale <br> Integration <br> (GSI) | - | $>10^{7}$ | - |  |

## BASIC INFORMATION OF OP-AMP

Definition:An Operational Amplifier (opamp) is a direct coupled high-gain amplifier available as an IC. It is used to amplify dc as well as ac signals.

Originally it was designed to perform mathematical operations such as addition, subtractions, multiplication and integration. Hence it was named 'Operational Amplifier'.

## Opamp CircuitSymbol:



Fig.1: Opamp circuit Symbol

## Types of Packages:

There are 3 basic types ofIC packages for opamps. They are:

## 1. Flat Pack

2. Metal Can Pack (also called 'Transistor Pack' or 'TO Pack')
3. Dual-in-line Pack


Fig. 2: Types of IC packages

1. Flat Pack: Chip is enclosed in a rectangular ceramic case. Leads extend from sides as shown in Fig. 2 (a). It comes with 8, 10, 14 or 16 leads. It is more reliable and lighter. But it has high power consumption and power dissipation

## 2. Metal Can Pack:

Chip is mounted in a metal or plastic case.Pins are arranged radially as shown in Fig. 2 (b). It is available with $3,5,8,10$ or 12 pins. It is best suited for power amplifiers and audio amplifiers. It has external heat sink to dissipate heat.

## 3. Dual-in-line Package (DIP):

Chip is mounted inside a plastic or ceramic case. Pins are arranged perpendicular to chip in 2 lines. It is available with $8,12,14,16,20$ or 40 pins. A notch is provided to identify the pin numbers. It is suitable for mounting on PCBs. Most of the ICs come in DIP packages.

## Power Supply Voltages for ICs:

## 1. Linear ICs

Most of them require both +ve and -ve supply for the circuit operation. Usually they are equal in magnitude (e.g.: +15 V and -15 V ). Common point of two power supplies must be grounded. Otherwise, IC gets damaged.

A few linear ICs (earlier OP-AMPs) use unequal supply voltages. (e.g.: 720 OP-AMP). Some ICs operate with a single positive supply (e.g.: 324 OP-AMP).

## 2. Digital ICs:

Except ECL (Emitter Coupled Logic) family ICs, all digital ICs require only $=+$ ve supply.
Note: some dual supply voltage opamps can also be operated from a single supply voltage by using special extra circuitry.

## Labelling of power supply voltages:

It may vary from manufacturer to manufacturer.
Example:

| Manufacturer | Labelling |
| :--- | :--- |
| Fairchild | $\mathrm{V}^{+}$and $\mathrm{V}^{-}$ |
| Motorola | $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$ and $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EE}}$ |

## Equivalent Circuit of OP-AMP:



Fig. 3 (a)
Fig. 3 (b)
Fig. 3 (a) shows the opamp symbol. It has 2 input and 1 output terminals. Its - ve terminal ' 2 '(in fig. 3 (a)) is called 'inverting terminal'. Its + ve terminal ' 1 ' is called 'non-inverting terminal'.

If $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{2}$ are the voltages measured at terminals ' 1 ' and ' 2 ' respectively w.r.t. ground, then
$\left(V_{1}-V_{2}\right)$ is called differential-input voltage. It is denoted by ' $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ '
$\left(\mathrm{V}_{1}+\mathrm{V}_{2}\right) / 2$ is called common-mode input voltage. It is denoted by ' $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ '

## Equivalent Circuit of opamp:

Fig. 3 (b) presents the equivalent or internal circuit of opamp. It is the Thevenin's equivalent circuit of Fig. 3 (a). Here $A_{O L} V_{d}$ is 'Thevenin's equivalent voltage source' and $R_{o}$ is 'Thevenin's equivalent voltage resistance' or 'output resistance'. $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is the input resistance and $R_{L}$ is the external load resistance.

Opamp has 2 supply terminals $\mathrm{V}^{+}$(or $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$ ) and $\mathrm{V}^{-}\left(\right.$or $\left.-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EE}}\right)$. Magnitude of $\mathrm{V}^{+}=$Magnitude of $\mathrm{V}^{-}$. Typical supply voltages for opamp range from $\pm 9 \mathrm{~V}$ to $\pm 22 \mathrm{~V}$. For 741 opamp, supply voltage is $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$.

The output voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is normally measured across a load resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L}}$.
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is given by $\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{o}}=\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{o}} \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{d}}=\mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{O L}}\left(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{1}}-\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{2}}\right)$
where $A_{O L}$ is called open loop voltage gain of opamp. It is the gain when there is no feedback between input and output.

If output is fedback to input, the gain is called closed loop voltage gain. It is denoted by $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}$. Note that $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ will never exceed supply voltages.

The utility (usage) of opamp is greatly increased by providing negative feedback. Then output is not driven into saturation and circuit behaves in a linear manner.

## IDEAL OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIER

## Ideal Opamp Characteristics:

1. Open loop voltage gain $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{OL}}=\infty$
2. Input Resistance $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}=\infty$
3. Output Resistance $\mathrm{Ro}=0$
4. Bandwidth $=\infty$
5. Common Mode Rejection Ratio $(\mathrm{CMRR})=\infty$
6. Slew Rate $=\infty$
7. Zero Offset (i.e., if inputs $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are equal, output $V o=0$ )
8. Characteristics do not drift with temperature

## Virtual Ground:

An ideal opamp has infinite input resistance $\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)$ and infinite voltage gain $\left(\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{OL}}\right)$.
Since $\mathrm{Ri}=\infty$,
No current flows through any input terminal of opamp..... (1)
Since $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{OL}}=\infty$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{OL}}=\frac{v o}{v d}=\infty \\
& \text { i.e., } \frac{v_{o}}{v 1-v 2}=\infty
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\text { i.e., } v_{1}-v_{2}=0 \quad \text { or } \quad v_{1}=v_{2}
$$

i.e., Both inputs are at same potential orthere exists a short circuit at the input of the opamp .... (2)
From points (1) and (2), we can say that there exists a virtual ground at the input of opamp. It is illustrated in Fig. 5.


Fig.5: Virtual Ground

Operational Amplifier Internal Circuit (Or Block Diagram of Commercial Opamp)


Fig. 6: Opamp Internal Circuit
Fig. 6 shows the internal circuit of an opamp.

## Stage 1 and Stage2:

They form a cascaded differential amplifier. They provide high gain to differential signals and cancel common-mode signals.

## Stage3:

It is an emitter follower supplied with constant current source. It acts as a level translator as well as a buffer.

## (i) Level translator:

Because of direct coupling between stages, a dc level rises from stage to stage. It shifts the operating point of next stages. This limits the $o / p$ voltage swing and may even distort the $o / p$ signal.

Level translator shifts the dc level so that operating point remains the same. So, there is no distortion. It also sees that quiescent o/p voltage is zero for zero $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal.

## (ii) Buffer:

It provides high input impedance and low output impedance. Thus, it isolates high gain stages from the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ stage.

## Stage4:

It is o/p stage. It supplies the required load current and low output impedance. A simple o/p stage is an emitter follower circuit with complementary symmetry transistors. It consists of one NPN and one PNP transistor. Their emitters are coupled as shown in Fig. 7.


Fig. 7

## DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS OF OPAMPS

## (A) DC Characteristics:

## 1. Input Bias Current( $\mathbf{I}_{\underline{B}}$ ):

It is the average of the currents that flow into the inverting (-ve) and non-inverting (+ve) terminals of opamp.

Let $I_{B_{1}}=$ Current throughthe non-inverting terminal
$I_{B_{2}}=$ Current throughthe non-inverting terminal
Then input bias current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}=\frac{I_{B_{1}}+I_{B_{2}}}{2}$

Its units are ' $n A$ '. Ideally it is zero. For 741 opamp (at $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ), its typical value is $I_{B}=80 \mathrm{nA}$

## 2. Input Offset Current ( $\mathbf{I}_{\underline{i} \underline{o r}}$ or $\mathbf{I}_{o s}$ ):

It is the difference of currents entering the inverting and non-inverting terminals of opamp. It is given by

$$
\left|I_{i o}\right|=I_{B_{1}}-I_{B_{2}}
$$

It is expressed in ' nA ', Ideally it is zero. For $741 \mathrm{opamp}\left(\right.$ at $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) its typical value $=20 \mathrm{nA}$

## 3.Input Offset Voltage ( $\mathbf{V}_{\text {io }}$ or $\mathbf{V}_{\text {is }}$ ):

It is the voltage that must be applied between the two input terminals of opamp to balance it (i.e., to make output voltage zero). It is expressed in 'mV', Ideally it is zero. For 741 opamp (at $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) its typical value $=20 \mathrm{mV}$.

## 4. Maximum (orTotal) Output Offset Voltage ( $\mathbf{V}_{\text {ot }}$ ):

It is the output voltage of opamp when its two input terminals are grounded. Its value depends on whether compensating technique is used or not.

If no compensating technique is used, it is given by
$\mathrm{V}_{\text {от }}=\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage due to $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ offset voltage $+\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage due to $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ bias current
i.e., $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OT}}=\left(1+\frac{R f}{R_{1}}\right) \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{io}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}$

If a compensated resistance $\mathrm{R}_{\text {COMP }}$ is connected to compensate for input bias current, then

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OT}}=\left(1+\frac{R f}{R_{1}}\right) \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{io}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} I_{\mathrm{io}}
$$

where $\mathrm{V}_{\text {io }}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{io}}$ are input offset voltage and currents respectively.
Ideally $V_{\text {OT }}=0$

## 5. Thermal Drifts:

## (i) Input Offset Current Drift:

It is the ratio of change in input offset current to the change in temperature. It is given by

$$
\Delta I_{i o} / \Delta T
$$

It is expressed in $\mathrm{nA} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

## (ii) Input Offset Voltage Drift:

It is the ratio of change in input offset voltage to the change in temperature. It is given by

$$
\Delta V_{i o} / \Delta T
$$

It is expressed in $\mathrm{mV} /{ }^{0} \mathrm{C}$.

## (B) AC Characteristics

## 1. Frequency Response:

When frequency increases, gain of opamp reduces and phase angle between the input and output increases. This is due to the presence of integrated capacitors and stray capacitances.

## Case (i): Single Corner Frequency

Let all the capacitive effects can be represented by a single capacitor ' C '. i.e., let there be a single corner frequency. Let it be ' $f_{1}$ '.


Fig. 8
Fig. 8 represents high frequency model of an opamp with single corner frequency. From figure, we get
$v_{o}=\frac{-j X_{C}}{R_{0}-j X_{C}} . A_{O L} v_{d}$
where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{OL}}$ is open loop gain of opamp.
$=\frac{-j^{2} X_{C}}{j R_{0}-j^{2} X_{C}} . A_{O L} v_{d}$ (by multiplying numerator and denominator by j )
$=\frac{X_{C}}{j R_{0}+X_{C}} \cdot A_{O L} v_{d}\left(\right.$ Since $\left.\mathrm{j}^{2}=-1\right)$
$=\frac{1 / \omega_{C}}{j R_{0}+1 / \omega_{C}} . A_{O L} v_{d} \quad\left(\right.$ Since $\left.X_{C}=1 / \omega_{C}\right)$
Thus $v_{o}=\frac{A_{O L} v_{d}}{1+j \omega R_{0} C}$
Midband gain $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{v}_{0} / \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$

$$
=\frac{A_{O L}}{1+j \omega R_{0} C}
$$

Thus $\mathrm{A}=\frac{A_{O L}}{1+j \omega R_{0} C}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& =\frac{A_{O L}}{1+j 2 \pi f R_{0} C} \quad(\text { because } \omega=2 \pi f) \\
& =\frac{A_{O L}}{1+\frac{f}{\left(\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{0} C}\right)}} \\
& =\frac{A O L}{1+\frac{f}{f_{1}}} \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots(1) \tag{1}
\end{align*}
$$

$\therefore$ Magnitude of $\mathrm{A}=|\boldsymbol{A}|=\frac{\boldsymbol{A O L}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f 1}\right)^{2}}} \ldots \ldots$.
Phase angle $\phi=\operatorname{Tan}^{-\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{f} / \mathbf{f}_{\mathbf{1}}\right)$
Another expression for $\mathbf{A}_{0}$ :
Eq. (1) can be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{A} & =A_{O L} /\left(1+j 2 \pi f / 2 \pi f_{1}\right) \\
= & A_{O L} /\left(1+j \omega / \omega_{1}\right)(\text { Since } 2 \pi f=\omega) \\
& =A_{O L} /\left(1+s / \omega_{1}\right) \quad(\text { because } j \mathrm{w}=\mathrm{s}) \\
& =\frac{A_{O L}}{s+\omega_{1}} \ldots \ldots .(4) \tag{4}
\end{align*}
$$

From eqs. (2) and (3), we can draw the magnitude characteristics and phase characteristics


Fig. 9 (a) Fig. 9 (b)

## (i) Magnitude Characteristics (for single corner frequency):

Fig. 9(a) represents magnitude characteristics. Frequency (in Hz ) is taken on X -axis in log scale. Gain (in dB ) is taken on Y -axis in linear scale.

Corner frequency ' $f_{1}$ ' is the frequency at which gain falls by $\mathbf{3 d B}$ below its maximum value. It is also called ' $\mathbf{3} \mathbf{~ d B}$ ' frequency or 'break frequency'.

Up to $f_{1}$, gain is constant. Later it rolls off(falls) at a rate of $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade (or -6 dB per octave).

Decade means 10 times increase in frequency (e.g.: Increase from 1 KHz to 10 KHz ). Octave means 2 times increase in frequency (e.g.: increase from 2 KHz to 4 KHz )

## (ii) Phase Characteristics:

Fig. 9 (b) shows the phase characteristics of opamp. Here X-axis represents frequency (in Hz ) in $\log$ scale. Y-axis represents phases shift (in degrees) in linear scale.
Phase angle $\phi$ is $0^{0}$ at $0 \mathrm{~Hz},-45^{0}$ at corner frequency $\mathrm{f}_{1}$ and $-90^{0}$ at infinite frequency.
Note that zero frequency does not exist on log scale. So, for practical purposes, zero frequency is taken one decade below corner frequency. Infinite frequency means one decade above corner frequency.

## Case (ii):Multiple Corner Frequencies

Since opamp has many stages, there may be different RC pole pairs. So, there will be multiple corner frequencies. Let there be three corner frequencies $f_{1}, f_{2}$ and $f_{3}$. Then we can show that

$$
\mathrm{A}=\frac{A 0}{\left\{1+j\left(f / f_{1}\right)\right\}\left\{1+j\left(f / f_{2}\right)\right\}\left\{1+j\left(f / f_{3}\right)\right\}}
$$

where $0<\mathrm{f}_{1}<\mathrm{f}_{2}<\mathrm{f}_{3}$
We can also write the above equation as
$\mathrm{A}=\frac{A_{O L} \omega_{1} \omega_{2} \omega_{3}}{\left(s+\omega_{1}\right)\left(s+\omega_{2}\right)\left(s+\omega_{3}\right)}$
Where A is overall transfer function.
For each corner frequency, phase angle increases by $90^{\circ}$. When phase angle becomes $360^{\circ}$, Barkhausen criterion is satisfied and oscillations are set. To prevent oscillations, we use a technique called 'frequency compensation'


Fig. 10
Fig. 10represents straight line approximation of magnitude characteristics of a typical opamp.
Here there are 3 corner frequencies. $\mathrm{f}_{1}=200 \mathrm{KHZ}, \mathrm{f}_{2}=2 \mathrm{MHz}, \mathrm{f}_{3}=20 \mathrm{MHz}$.
Up to $f_{1}$, gain is constant at $90 d B$. From $f_{1}$ to $f_{2}$, gain falls at a rate of $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade. From $f_{2}$ to $f_{3}$, gain falls at a rate of $-40 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade. After $f_{3}$, gain falls at a rate of $-60 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade .

## 2. Slew Rate:

Slew Rate is defined as the maximum rate of change of output voltage of an opamp. It is denoted by $\frac{d V o}{d t}$ and expressed in Volts $/ \mu \mathrm{Sec}$.
For an ideal opamp, slew rate is $\infty$. i.e., output voltage changes simultaneously with input voltage. Practically, a capacitor is connected within or outside the opamp to prevent oscillations. Since voltage across capacitor cannot change instantaneously, $\frac{d V o}{d t}$ cannot be infinite. For 741 opamp, it is $0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{Sec}$.

Important features of slew rate:

- It increases with increase in bandwidth.
- It increases with increase in closed loop gain.
- It increases with increase in dc supply voltage.
- It decreases with increase in temperature.
- It affects the opamp performance at high frequencies.

Slew rate is specified in data sheet at unity gain and no load. So, it is measured for a voltage follower.

## 3. Bandwidth:

It is the range of frequencies over which the operation of opamp is satisfactory.
For a single corner frequency $f_{1}$, gain of opamp is constant up to $f_{1}$. Therefore, Bandwidth $=$ $\mathrm{f}_{1}$.

## 4. Unity gainbandwidth:

It is defined as the bandwidth of an opamp when the voltage gain is ' 1 '. Ideally it is infinity. Practically, it is of the order of a few MHz.

It is also called 'gainbandwidth product (GBW)' or 'Small signal band-width' or 'Unity gain crossover frequency'.

## 5. Transient Response:

It is the immediate response of the opamp. 'Rise Time' and 'Overshoot' are two important characteristics of transient response.

## (i) Rise Time:

It is the time taken by the output of opamp to change from $10 \%$ to $90 \%$ of sits maximum value. It is expressed in $\mu \mathrm{Sec}$. Ideally it is zero. for 741 opamp , its typical value is $0.3 \mu \mathrm{Sec}$.
(ii) Overshoot: It is the deviation of the opamp output from its steady state value. It is expressed as \% of output. Ideally it is zero. For 741 opamp, its typical value is $5 \%$.

## OTHER IMPORTANT TOPICS

## Common Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR):

Common-mode Signal: It is the average of the two inputs $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ of opamp. It is given by

$$
v_{c}=\frac{v_{1}+v_{2}}{2}
$$

Difference-mode signal: It is the difference of two inputs of opamp. It is given by

$$
v_{d}=v_{1}-v_{2}
$$

CMRR:It is defined as the ratio of differential gain ' $A_{d}$ ' to common mode gain ' $A_{c}$ '. It is denoted by ' $\rho$ ' and isgiven by

$$
\rho=\left|\frac{A_{d}}{A_{c}}\right|
$$

Output of an opamp is given by

$$
v_{o}=A_{c} v_{c}+A_{d} v_{d}
$$

It is expressed in decibels. Ideally it is infinity. For $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}$, it is 90 dB . It is a 'metric' or 'figure of merit' of an opamp. The higher the CMRR, the better is the performance of opamp.
Problem1.1:Determine the o/p voltage of opampfor $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltages of $v_{1}=150 \mu \mathrm{~V}, v_{2}=140$ $\mu \mathrm{V}, A_{d}=5000$ andCMRR $=20$

## Solution:

Output voltage $v_{o}=A_{c} v_{c}+A_{d} v_{d} \ldots$ (1)
i.e., $v_{o}=A_{d} v_{d}\left(1+\frac{A_{c} v_{c}}{A_{d} v_{d}}\right)$
i.e., $v_{o}=A_{d} v_{d}\left(1+\frac{1}{\rho} \cdot \frac{v_{c}}{v_{d}}\right)$
$v_{c}=$ Common-mode signal

$$
=\frac{v_{1}+v_{2}}{2}=\frac{150 \mu V+140 \mu V}{2}=145 \mu V
$$

$v_{d}=$ Difference-mode signal $=v_{1}-v_{2}$

$$
=150 \mu V-140 \mu V=10 \mu V
$$

Given that $\rho=20$ and $A_{d}=5000$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) $\Rightarrow$

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{o}= & 5000 \times 10 \times 10^{-6}\left(1+\frac{1}{20} \times \frac{145 \times 10^{-6}}{10 \times 10^{-6}}\right) \\
= & 53.625 \mathrm{mV}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Power Supply rejection Ratio (PSRR):

It is defined as the ratio of change in input offset voltage of opamp to the change in supply voltage. It is given by

$$
\operatorname{PSRR}=\Delta V_{i o} / \Delta V
$$

where V is the supply voltage.
It is expressed in ' $\mu \mathrm{V} / \mathrm{V}$ ' or in ' dB '.
For $\mu \mathrm{A} 741 \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{PSRR}+150 \mathrm{~V} / \mu \mathrm{V}$
The lower the value of PSRR, the better the opamp.
Note: It is also called 'Supply Voltage Rejection Ratio (SVRR)' or 'Power Supply Sensitivity (PSS)'.

## Offset Balancing Techniques:

When both inputs are grounded $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of an opamp should be ideally zero. But, practically there exists a very small $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage called output offset voltage. It is due to the input bias current ' $I_{B}$ ' or input offset voltage ' $V_{i o}$ ' or ' $V_{o s}$ ').

To nullify (cancel or balance) the o/p offset voltage, many opamps come with a potentiometer between pins 1 and 5 of opamp. Manufacturer provides it. The position of wiper is adjusted to nullify the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ offset voltage.

If an opamp has no such provision, we use external balancing techniques. They are called 'Universal Balancing Techniques'.

## Universal Balancing Techniques:



Fig. 11 (a) Forinverting Amplifier Fig. 11 (b) Foe non-inverting Amplifier
Fig. 11 (a) and Fig. 11 (b) show the universal balancing techniques for inverting and noninverting amplifiers respectively

In case of non-inverting amplifier, we connect a resistor to the (+) terminal of opamp. It is shown in Fig. (b). The value of $\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ is given by
$\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}=\mathrm{R} 1 \| \mathrm{Rf}$
$R_{\text {comp }}$ is connected to reduce the effects of input bias current $I_{B}$

## Problem on maximum or total o/p offset voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {от: }}$ :

## Problem 1.2:

(a) For the non-inverting amplifier of Fig. (b), $\mathrm{R}_{1}=1 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$. Calculate the maximum output offset voltage due to
$V_{\text {ios }}$ and $I_{B}$. The opamp is LM 307 with $V_{\text {ios }}=10 \mathrm{mV}$ and $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}=300 \mathrm{nA}, \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{os}}=50 \mathrm{nA}$.
(b) Calculate the value of $\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ needed to reduce the effect of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}$.
(c) Calculate the maximum output offset voltage if the above calculated $\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ is connected in the circuit.

Solution:
(a) It is the output voltage of opamp when its two input terminals are grounded. Its value depends on whether compensating technique is used or not.

If no compensating technique is used, $\mathrm{V}_{\text {от }}$ is given by
$\mathrm{V}_{\text {OT }}=\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage due to $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ offset voltage $+\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage due to $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ bias current
i.e., $\quad \mathrm{V}_{\text {OT }}=\left(1+\frac{R f}{R_{1}}\right) \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{io}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}$
$=\left(1+\frac{10 \times 10^{3}}{1 \times 10^{3}}\right) 10 \times 10^{-3}+10 \times 10^{3} \times 300 \times 10^{-9}$
$=110 \times 10^{-3}+3 \times 10^{-3}=113 \mathrm{mV}$
(b) The value of $\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ needed is

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{comp}}=\mathrm{R} 1 \| \mathrm{Rf} \\
& \quad=1 \mathrm{~K} \Omega \| 10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega=990 \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

(c) With $\mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ in the circuit

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{V}_{\text {OT }} & =\left(1+\frac{R f}{R_{1}}\right) \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{io}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} I_{\mathrm{io}} \\
& =110 \times 10^{-3}+10 \times 10^{3} \times 50 \times 10^{-9} \\
& =\left(110 \times 10^{-3}+0.5 \times 10^{-3}\right) \mathrm{V} \\
& =110.5 \mathrm{mV}
\end{aligned}
$$

Note: From the above example, it can be seen that $\mathrm{V}_{\text {io }}$ contributes more to the $\mathrm{V}_{\text {OT }}$ compared to $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}$ or $I_{\text {io }}$

## Derivation for formula of Slew Rate:

Slew rate is expressed in data sheets for unity gain opamp with no load.
Unity gain means Gain $=1$ or output voltage $=$ input voltage
i.e., $\mathrm{Vo}=\mathrm{Vi} \ldots$. (1)

Let input $=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}} \operatorname{Sin} \omega \mathrm{t} \quad \ldots$ (2)

Eqs. (1) and (2) $\Rightarrow$
$\mathrm{Vo}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}} \operatorname{Sin} \omega \mathrm{t}$
$\frac{d V_{o}}{d t}=\omega \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}} \operatorname{Cos} \omega \mathrm{t}$
Slew rate $=\left|\frac{d V_{o}}{d t}\right|_{\text {max }}$
It occurs atCos $\omega \mathrm{t}=1$
i.e., Slew rate $=\left|\frac{d V_{o}}{d t}\right|_{\max } \operatorname{atCos} \omega \mathrm{t}=1$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\omega \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}} \cdot 1 \ldots . \quad \quad \text { ffrom eq. (3)] } \\
& =\omega \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{m}}=2 \pi \mathrm{ff}_{\mathrm{m}} \operatorname{Volts} / \operatorname{Sec}\left(\text { Since } \omega_{\mathrm{m}}=2 \pi \mathrm{f}\right) \\
& =\frac{2 \pi \mathrm{fvm}}{10^{6}} \text { Volts } / \mu \mathrm{Sec}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\mathrm{f}=$ input frequency
Thus, Slew rate $=2 \pi \mathrm{fV}_{\mathrm{m}}$ Volts $/ \mathrm{Sec}=\frac{2 \pi \mathrm{fvm}}{10^{6}}$ Volts $/ \mu \mathrm{Sec}$

## Problems on slew rate:

Problem 3.3: The o/p voltage of certain opamp circuit changes by 20 V in 4 micro seconds. What is slew rate?

## Solution:

Slew rate $=\frac{d V_{o}}{d t}=\frac{20 \mathrm{~V}}{4 x \text { 『Sec }}=5 \mathrm{Volts} / \mu \mathrm{Sec}$
Problem 3.4: Assume that 741 opamp is connected as a unity gain inverting amplifier. Let the input change be 8 V . Determine the time taken for the output to change by 8 V .

## Solution:

For 741 opamp Slew rate $=0.5$ Volts $/ \mu \mathrm{Sec}$

$$
\text { i.e., } \frac{d V_{o}}{d t}=0.5 \mathrm{Volts} / \mu \mathrm{Sec}
$$

Given that $\mathrm{dV}_{\mathrm{o}}=10 \mathrm{~V}$
i.e., $\frac{10}{d t}=0.5 \mathrm{Volts} / \mu \mathrm{Sec}$
i.e., $\mathrm{dt}=\frac{10 \mathrm{~V}}{0.5 \mathrm{~V} / \text { ®Sec }}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{10}{0.5} \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{Sec} \\
& =20 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{Sec}=20 \mu \mathrm{Sec}
\end{aligned}
$$

## $\underline{\mu 741}$ opamp and its features

- It is manufactured by Fairchild Corporation. $\mu \mathrm{A}$ is the manufacturer'sidentification code.
- It is a monolithic IC constructed using planar epitaxial process.
- It is used for many linear applications and some non-linear applications. It is internally frequency compensated.
- It has high gain, high bandwidth, low power consumption and gives better performance.
- It has short circuit protection and "offset" null capability
- It comes in 3 IC packs: 8-pin metal can, 10-pin flat pack and 8- or 10-pin DIP.
- It is available in different classes such as A, C, E, S and SC.
- Manufacture data sheet specifies two sets of electrical characteristics.


## Pin Diagram of $\mu \mathrm{A} 741$ opamp:



Fig. 4: Pin diagram

## Classes of 741 opamps:

741 opamp is available in different classes such as A, C, E, S and SC.
(a) Military grade:

741: Military grade opamp (temperature range is $-55^{\circ}$ to $125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ )
741A: Improved version of 741
741S: Opamp with high slew rate
(b) Commercial grade:

741 C : Commercial grade opamp (temperature range is $-0^{0}$ to $70^{\circ} / 75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ )
741E: Improved version of 741C
741SC: Opamp with high slew rate
Military graded ICs are costly, but have superior quality. Commercial graded ICs are cheaper but have more tolerances.

## *** Completed ${ }^{* * *}$

## QUESTION BANK (UNIT-1)

## Content of Descriptive Questions

1. What is an Integrated Circuit? What are its advantages over discrete circuits? Describe the classification of ICs
2. What is an Operational Amplifier? Why it is called so? (Why it is named so?) Describe the equivalent circuit of an opamp.
3. Describe various levels of integration of ICs? What are the characteristics of an Ideal Opamp?
4. Draw and explain the internal circuit of an operational amplifier.
5. Describe the DC characteristics of an operational amplifier.
6. Describe the AC characteristics of an operational amplifier.

## Note: A problem may also be given with any question.

## $\underline{2}$ Marks Questions

1. Define an IC.
2. What is an operational amplifier?
3. What are the characteristics of an Ideal Opamp?
4. Distinguish among linear ICs, digital ICs and mixed-signal ICs.
5. What are various types of IC packages?
6. Draw the equivalent circuit of an opamp.
7. Describe the concept of virtual ground of an opamp.
8. Define the corner frequency of an opamp.
9. What is Slew rate?
10. What is CMRR?
11. What is PSRR (SVRR)?
12. Define (or what is) input bias current?
13. Define (or what is) input offset current?
14. Define (or what is) input offset voltage?
15. Define (or what is) output offset voltage?
16. Define input offset current drift and input offset voltage drift.
17. What is the difference between open loop opamp and closed loop opamp?
18. Why opamp is named so?
19. Define rise time and overshoot of an opamp.
20.Draw the pin diagram of 741 opamp.

## Objective Questions

1. A linear IC is also called --------- IC.
(a) Analog (b) Digital (c) Discrete (d) None
2. Digital ICs process
(a) Voltages (b) Analog signals
(c) Digital signals
(d) Mixed input signals
3. What is the advantage of an IC over a discrete circuit?
(a) High reliability (b) Better performance (c) High speed (d) All of the above
4. ULSI stands for
(a) Urgent Linear Scale Integration (b) Ultra Large Scale Integration(c)Universal Large Scale Integration (d) Unknown Large Scale Integration
5. An opamp can amplify ----- signals.
(a) AC (b) DC (c) Both (d) None
6. Which is the most popular IC package?
(a) Flat Pack
(b) Metal Can Pack
(c) TO Pack
(d) Dual-in-line Pack
7. The stages in an opamp are ------ coupled.
(a) Resistor (b) Capacitor(c) Direct (d) Transformer
8. A buffer stage provides ------ input impedance and ------ output impedance (a)High, low (b) Low, low (c)High, high (d) Low, high
9. If $I_{B_{1}}$ and $I_{B_{2}}$ are the currents entering and inverting and non-inverting terminals of opamp, the value of input bias current is
(a) $\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{B}_{1}}-\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{B}_{2}}$
(b) $\frac{I_{B_{1}}+I_{B_{2}}}{2}$
(c) $I_{B_{1}} I_{B_{2}}+$
(d) $I_{B_{1}} / I_{B_{2}}$
10.If $I_{B_{1}}$ and $I_{B_{2}}$ are the currents entering and inverting and non-inverting terminals of opamp, the value of input offset current is
(a) $I_{B_{1}}-I_{B_{2}}$ (b) $\frac{\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{B}_{\mathbf{1}}}+\boldsymbol{I}_{\boldsymbol{B}_{\mathbf{2}}}}{\mathbf{2}}$ (c) $I_{B_{1}} I_{B_{2}}+$ (d) $I_{B_{1}} / I_{B_{2}}$
11.What is the order of input bias current?
(a) $m A(b) \mu A(c) n A(d)$ Amperes
12.One octave means
(a) 8 times the frequency (b) 4 times the frequency (c) 10 times the frequency (d) 2 times the frequency
13.One decade means
(a) 8 times the frequency (b) 2 times the frequency (c) 10 times the frequency (d) 4 times the frequency dsf
14.To prevent oscillations a -------- is connected within or outside the opamp
(a) Resistor (b) Inductor (c) Capacitor (d) None
15.Slew rate decreases with increase in $\qquad$
(b) $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}$ (b) DC Supply voltage (c) Bandwidth (d) Temperature
16.If $v_{1}$ and $v_{2}$ are the two inputs of an opamp, the common-mode signal is
(a) $\frac{v_{1}+v_{2}}{2}$ (b) $v_{1}-v_{2}$ (c) $v_{1}+v_{2}$ d (d) $\frac{v_{1}-v_{2}}{2}$
10. Power Supply Rejection Ratio is given by
(a) $\Delta V_{i o} / \Delta T$ (b) $\Delta V_{i o} / \Delta T$ (c) $\Delta I_{i o} / \Delta V(\mathbf{d}) \Delta \boldsymbol{V}_{i o} / \Delta V$
$18 . \mathrm{R}_{\text {comp }}$ is connected to reduce the effects of input bias current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{B}}$
(a) Input offset current (b) Input bias current (c) Input offset voltage (d) Gain of an opamp
11. $\mu \mathrm{A} 741$ opamp is available as a ------ IC
(a)Thin-film(b) Thick-film (c)Monolithic (d) Not available as an IC
12. $-40 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade means
(a) - 6 octaves per decade (b) - 12 octaves per decade (c) -18 octaves per decade (d) - 24 octaves per decade

## Unit-2

## Linear Applications of opamps

## Inverting Amplifier

Fig. 1 represents an inverting amplifier. Here input signal (ac or dc) is applied to the (-) input of opamp through resistor $\mathrm{R}_{1} .(+)$ terminal is grounded. Output voltage Vo is fed back to (-) terminal through feedback resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$.


Fig.1: Inverting Amplifier

Consider nodes ' $a$ ' and ' $b$ '. Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{v_{a-}-v_{i}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{a-} v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let opamp be ideal. i.e., there exists a virtual short circuit at the input of opamp.

$$
\text { i.e., } v_{a}=v_{b}=0
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{0-v_{i}}{R_{1}}+\frac{0-v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0 \\
-\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}}-\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

i.e., closed loop gain is

$$
\therefore \mathbf{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}=\frac{v_{0}}{v_{i}}=-\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}}
$$

The - ve sign indicates that $v_{o}$ is $180^{\circ}$ out of phase with $v_{i}$.
The gain $A_{C L}$ can be adjusted by proper selection of $R_{1}$ and $R_{f}$.
Problem 2.1: Design an amplifier using opamp with a gain of -10 .

## Solution:

Since closed loop gain $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}$ is -ve, it is an inverting amplifier.

$$
\therefore \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}=-R_{f} / R_{1}=-10
$$

Choose $\mathrm{R}_{1}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$

$$
\text { i.e., } R_{f}=10 R_{1}=10 \times 10=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega
$$

## Non-Inverting Amplifier

Fig. 2 (a) represents a non-inverting amplifier. Here input signal $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$ (ac or dc) is applied to the non-inverting terminal. Output $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is feedback to inverting terminal through feedback resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$.


Fig. 2 (a): Non-Inverting Amplifier
Consider node 'a' as shown.
Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{v_{a-0}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{a-0}}{R_{f}}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let the opamp be ideal. i.e., there exists a virtual short circuit at the input of opamp.

$$
\text { i.e., } v_{a}=v_{i}
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{v_{i-} 0}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{i-}-0}{R_{f}}=0 \\
\text { i.e., } v_{i}\left(\frac{1}{R_{1}}+\frac{1}{R_{f}}\right)=\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}} \\
\left(\frac{R_{1}+R_{f}}{R_{1} R_{f}}\right) v_{i}=\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}} \\
\text { i.e., } \mathbf{A}_{\mathbf{C L}}=\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}=\frac{R_{1}+R_{f}}{R_{1}}=\mathbf{1}+\frac{R_{1}}{\boldsymbol{R}_{f}}
\end{gathered}
$$

$A_{C L}$ can be adjusted by proper selection of $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$
Note: Compared to inverting amplifier, a non-inverting amplifier has extremely high input resistance (i.e., $\mathrm{Ri}=\infty$ ). It is because the opamp draws negligible current from the signal source.

## Voltage Follower

Consider the non-inverting amplifier shown in Fig. 2. If $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=0$ and $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\infty$, we get the circuit shown in Fig. 2 (b)


Fig. 2 (b) Voltage follower
Consider node 'a' as shown.
Since it is shorted to $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$,
$\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$
Let opamp be ideal. i.e., there exists a short circuit at its input.
i.e., $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$

Eqs. (1) and (2) $\Rightarrow$
$\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$
i.e., $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage is equal to $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage, both in phase and magnitude.

In other words, $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage follows $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage.
Hence, the circuit is called a voltage follower.

## Applications of voltage follower:

Voltage follower has very high i/p impedance (order of $\mathrm{M} \Omega$ ) and low o/p impedance. Thus, it is used as a buffer for impedance matching, that is, to connect a high impedance source to low impedance load.
Problem 2.2: Design an amplifier using one opamp with a gain of +5 .

Solution:
Since gain $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}$ is $=+\mathrm{ve}$, it is a non-inverting amplifier.
$\therefore \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}}=5$
i.e., $\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}}=5-1=4$
or $R_{f}=4 R_{1}$
Choose $\mathrm{R}_{1}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
$\therefore \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=4 \times 1 \mathrm{~K} \Omega=4 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$

## Summer or Adder

## (a) Inverting summer:



Fig.3: Inverting Summer
Fig. 3 shows an inverting summing and scaling amplifier. (Scaling factor or weight here means multiplication factor). Here $V_{1}, V_{2}$ and $V_{3}$ are 3 input voltages. $R_{1}, R_{2}$ and $R_{3}$ are input resistors. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{O}}$ is the output voltage and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is feedback resistor.
Consider nodes ' $a$ ' and ' $b$ ' as shown.
Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is
$\frac{v_{a}-v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{3}}{R_{3}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0 \ldots$.
Let opamp be ideal. i.e., there exists a virtual short circuit at the input of opamp.

$$
\text { i.e., } v_{a}=v_{b}=0
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{array}{r}
-\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}-\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}-\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}}=\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}} \\
\text { i.e., } \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}=-\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}}\right) . \tag{2}
\end{array}
$$

i.e., output is inverted and weighted sum of the inputs.

## Special Cases:

Case (i): Let $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{2}=\mathrm{R}_{3}=\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{R}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes

$$
v_{o}=-\mathrm{R}\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R}+\frac{v_{1}}{R}+\frac{v_{1}}{R}\right)=-\left(v_{1}+v_{2}+v_{3}\right)
$$

i.e., output is the inverted sum of inputs. So, the circuit is a simple summer circuit.

Case (ii): $R_{1}=R_{2}=R_{3}=3 R_{f}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes
$\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}=-\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}\left(\frac{v_{1}}{3 R_{f}}+\frac{v_{2}}{3 R_{f}}+\frac{v_{3}}{3 R_{f}}\right)$
i.e., $v_{o}=-\left(v_{1}+v_{2}+v_{3}\right) / 3$
i.e., output is the inverted average of the inputs. so, this circuit is called an averaging amplifier.

## (b) Non-Inverting Summer



Fig.4: Non-Inverting Summer
Fig. 4 shows a non-inverting summing and scaling amplifier. Here $V_{1}, V_{2}$ and $V_{3}$ are 3 input voltages. $R_{1}, R_{2}$ and $R_{3}$ are input resistors. $V_{O}$ is the output voltage and $R_{f}$ is feedback resistor.

Consider nodes ' $a$ ' and ' $b$ ' as shown.

Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is
$\frac{v_{b}-v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{b}-v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{b}-v_{3}}{R_{3}}=0$
Let opamp be ideal. i.e., there exists a virtual short circuit at the input of opamp.

$$
\text { i.e., } v_{b}=v_{a}=0
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{v_{a}-v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{3}}{R_{3}}=0 \\
\text { i.e., } v_{a}\left(\frac{1}{R_{1}}+\frac{1}{R_{2}}+\frac{1}{R_{3}}\right)=\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}} \\
\text { i.e., } v_{a}=\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}}\right) /\left(\frac{1}{R_{1}}+\frac{1}{R_{2}}+\frac{1}{R_{3}}\right) \cdots \tag{2}
\end{gather*}
$$

Since it is a non-inverting amplifier

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}=\frac{v_{o}}{v_{a}}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R} \\
\text { i.e., } v_{o}=\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R}\right)\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}}\right) /\left(\frac{1}{R_{1}}+\frac{1}{R_{2}}+\frac{1}{R_{3}}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

Eq. (3) is of the form

$$
v_{o}=\mathrm{K}\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{2}}{R_{2}}+\frac{v_{3}}{R_{3}}\right)
$$

Where $\mathrm{K}=\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R}\right) /\left(\frac{1}{R_{1}}+\frac{1}{R_{2}}+\frac{1}{R_{3}}\right)$
i.e., output is non-inverted weighted sum of input.

## Special Case:

Let $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{2}=\mathrm{R}_{3}=\mathrm{R}=\frac{R_{f}}{2}$ (i.e., $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=2 \mathrm{R}$ )
Then eq. (3) becomes

$$
v_{o}=\left(1+\frac{2 R}{R}\right)\left(\frac{v_{1}}{R}+\frac{v_{2}}{R}+\frac{v_{3}}{R}\right) /\left(\frac{1}{R}+\frac{1}{R}+\frac{1}{R}\right)
$$

$=3 \frac{1}{R}\left(v_{1}+v_{2}+v_{3}\right) / \frac{3}{R}$
$=v_{1}+v_{2}+v_{3}$
i.e., Output is the non-inverted sum of inputs. So, the circuit is called a non-inverting summer circuit.

Subtractor (Or Difference Amplifier)


Fig.5: Subtractor
Fig. 5 shows an opamp subtractor circuit. Let $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$ be the voltage at the $(+)$ terminal of opamp. then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { Then } \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{v}_{1} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

By applying super position theorem, we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
v_{o}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}\left(1+\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right)+v_{2}\left(\frac{-R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right) \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

$=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}\left(\frac{R_{1}+R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right)-v_{2} R_{2} / R_{1}$
Putting the value of $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}$ from eq. (1) in to eq. (2), we get

$$
v_{o}=\mathrm{v}_{1} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \frac{R 1+R 2}{R_{1}}-v_{2} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}
$$

$$
=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left(v_{1}-v_{2}\right)
$$

If $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{2}$, then

$$
\mathbf{v}_{0}=\mathbf{v}_{1}-\mathbf{v}_{2}
$$

Thus, the circuit acts as a difference amplifier (or subtractor).
Problem 2.3: find the output of the following circuit


Let vk be the voltage at the non-inverting terminal of the given circuit.
$\therefore{ }_{\mathrm{vk}}=1 \mathrm{x} \frac{4}{4+2}=2 / 3 \mathrm{~V}$
Applying superposition theorem, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}= & \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}\left(1+\frac{100 K}{10 K}\right)+2\left(\frac{-100 K}{10 K}\right) \\
& =\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{k}}(1+10)-2 \times 10 \\
& =11 \mathrm{vk}-20 \\
& =11 \times \frac{2}{3}-20 \\
& =7.33-20 \mathrm{~m}=-12.67 \mathrm{~V}
\end{aligned}
$$

## Voltage to Current (V to I) Converter <br> (Transconductance Amplifier)

In many applications we need to convert voltage signal to appropriate current signal. This can be done using a Voltage to Current (V to I) Converter. Based on the type of load, V to I converters are of two types.
(i) V to I converter with floating load
(ii) V to I converter with grounded load

## (i) V to I converter with floating load:



Fig. 6 (a): V to I converter with floating load
Fig. 6 (a) represents a $V$ to $I$ converter with floating load $Z_{L}$. i.e., no end of $Z_{L}$ is grounded. Assuming ideal opamp, from Fig. 6, we write

$$
\frac{v_{i}-0}{R_{1}}=\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}
$$

Where $v_{i}$ is input voltage, $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ is input resistor and $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}$ is load current.

$$
\text { i.e., } \mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}}
$$

i.e., $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage $v_{i}$ is converted to an $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ current $\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}}$

## (ii) V to I converter with grounded load



Fig. 6 (b)V to I converter with grounded load

Fig. 6 (b)represents an $V$ to $I$ converter with grounded load $Z_{L}$. i.e., one end of $Z_{L}$ is grounded.

Let $v_{a}$ be the voltage at ( + ) terminal of opamp.
From Fig. 6 (b), we getcurrent downwards through $\mathbf{Z}_{\mathbf{L}}$ isi $i_{L}=i_{1}+i_{2}$
But $\mathrm{i}_{1}=\frac{v_{i}-v_{a}}{R}$
(2) and $\mathrm{i}_{2}=\frac{v_{o}-v_{a}}{R}$

But $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{v_{i}-v_{a}}{R}+\frac{v_{o}-v_{a}}{R}=\frac{v_{i}+v_{o}-2 v_{a}}{R}$
But gain of opamp $=1+\mathrm{R} / \mathrm{R}=2=\frac{v_{0}}{v_{a}}$
i.e., $v_{o}=2 v_{a}$

Eqs. (4) and (5) $\Rightarrow \mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{v_{i}+2 v_{a}-2 v_{a}}{R}=\frac{v_{i}}{R}$
i.e., $\quad \mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{L}}=\frac{v_{i}}{R}$
i.e., $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage $v_{i}$ is converted to current $\frac{v_{i}}{R}$.

Thus, the circuit acts as a voltage to current convertet.

## Applications of V-I Converters:

- Low voltage ( 0 to 1 V ) DC and AC voltmeters.
- LED and Zener diode tester


## Current to Voltage (I to V) Converter (or Transresistance amplifier)



Fig. 6 (c): I to V converter
Fig. 6 (c)shows an I to V converter.
Let us assume virtual ground at the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ of opamp. Then, no current flows through $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{s}}$. i.e., $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{s}}$ flows through $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$.

From Fig. 6 (c), we write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{v_{a-} v_{o}}{R_{f}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to virtual ground, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=0$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes $\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{s}}=\frac{-v_{o}}{R_{f}}$
i.e., $\quad \boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{o}}=-\mathrm{i}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$
i.e., $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ current is converted to an $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage $v_{0}$.

Here, resistor $R_{f}$ is shunted by a capacitor $C_{f}$ to reduce high frequency noise and possibility of oscillations.

## Instrumentation Amplifier

Instrumentation Amplifiers are widely used in instrumentation and control systems. They are especially used to amplify the low output of transducers.
Derivation for the output of an Instrumentation Amplifier:


Fig. 7 (a): Instrumentation Amplifier
Fig. 7(a) shows an instrumentation amplifier using 3 opamps $\mathrm{A}_{1}, \mathrm{~A}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{A}_{3}$.
The circuit for $\mathrm{A}_{3}$ as shown in the Fig. 7 (b).


Fig. 7 (b)
Fig. 7 (b) represents a subtractor (i.e., a difference amplifier)
Let $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}$ be the voltage at the $(+)$ terminal of $\mathrm{A}_{3}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}=\mathrm{V}_{1}{ }^{\prime} \cdot \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

By applying super position theorem, we get

$$
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}\left(1+\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right)+V_{2}^{\prime}\left(\frac{-R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right)
$$

$=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}\left(\frac{R_{1}+R_{2}}{R_{1}}\right)-V_{2}{ }^{\prime} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}$
Putting the value of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{k}}$ from eq. (1) in to above equation, we get

$$
V_{o}=\mathrm{V}_{1}^{\prime} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{ \pm}+R_{z}} \frac{R 1+R 2}{R_{1}}-V_{2}^{\prime} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}
$$

Thus $\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left(V_{1}^{\prime}-V^{\prime}{ }_{2}\right) \ldots \ldots$ (2).
Let opamp be ideal. i.e., no current flows through any input terminal of opamp. Voltage at (-) terminal $=\mathrm{V}_{2}$ and $\operatorname{vo}(+)$ terminal $=\mathrm{V}_{1}$

So, current I flowing upwards through $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{I}=\frac{V_{1}-V_{2}}{R} \ldots . . \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

From the circuit, we can write

$$
\mathrm{I}=\frac{V_{1}^{\prime}-V_{1}}{R}
$$

i.e., $V_{1}^{\prime}-V_{1}=\mathrm{IR}^{\prime}$
or

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{1}^{\prime}=V_{1}+I R^{\prime} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly

$$
\mathrm{I}=\frac{V_{2}-V_{2}^{\prime}}{R^{\prime}}
$$

$\mathrm{Or} V_{2}-V_{2}^{\prime}=I R^{\prime}$
i.e., $V_{2}^{\prime}=V_{2}-I^{\prime}$

Substituting the values of $V_{1}^{\prime}$ and $V_{2}^{\prime}$ from eqs. (4) and (5) in eq. (2), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{Vo}=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{1}+\mathrm{IR}^{\prime}-\mathrm{V}_{2}+\mathrm{IR}^{\prime}\right) \tag{6}
\end{equation*}
$$

$=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{1}-\mathrm{V}_{2}+2 \mathrm{IR}^{\prime}\right)$
Putting the value of ' $I$ ' from eq. (3) into eq. (6), we get

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{Vo}=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left[\left(\mathrm{~V}_{1}-\mathrm{V}_{2}\right)+2 \frac{R^{\prime}}{R}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{1}-\mathrm{V}_{2}\right)\right] \tag{7}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e., $\mathbf{V o}=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}}\left(\mathbf{V}_{1}-\mathbf{V}_{2}\right)\left[1+2 \frac{R^{\prime}}{R}\right]$

## Important points about $R$ :

(i) Differential gain of this amplifier can be varied by varying R. So replace R with a variable resistor (Potentiometer)
(ii) If we use potentiometer, and if we put the wiper to lower side, then R may become zero.

So, Vo becomes $\infty$.
(iii) So, we connect a fixed resistor (e.g.: $1 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ ) in series with potentiometer. So, we will get a minimum value of $\mathrm{R}=1 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$. Thus, the problem in (ii) can be avoided.

## Differentiator



Fig. 8 (a) Ideal Differentiator
Differentiator is a Circuit whose output is directly proportional to the derivative of input.

## (a) Differentiator

Fig. 8 (a) represents adifferentiator circuit. Consider node ' $a$ '.
Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1} \frac{d\left(v_{a}-v_{i}\right)}{d t}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For ideal opamp, there exists a virtual ground at the input of the opamp.
i.e.,

$$
v_{a}=0
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes $-C_{1} \frac{d v_{i}}{d t}=\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}}$ or $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{o}}=-\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1} \frac{\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{v}_{i}}{\boldsymbol{d} \boldsymbol{t}}$
i.e., $v_{o}$ is directly proportional to $\frac{d v_{i}}{d t}$, where $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1}$ is a proportionality constant. So, it is a differentiator circuit.
(b) Analysis in the frequency domain:


Fig. 8 (b)
Consider Fig. 8 (b).

$$
Z_{1}=\frac{1}{s C_{1}}
$$

$$
Z_{2}=R_{f}
$$

Gain A(s) $=-\frac{Z_{f}}{Z_{1}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&=\frac{R_{f}}{1 / s C_{1}} \\
&=-\mathrm{sR}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1} \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots .(1) \\
&=-\mathrm{jw} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1} \quad(\because \mathrm{~s}=\mathrm{j} \omega) \\
&=-\mathrm{j} 2 \pi \mathrm{ff}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1} \\
&=-\mathrm{j} /\left(1 / 2 \pi \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1}\right) \\
&=-\mathrm{j} / \mathrm{f} / \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}} \\
& \mathrm{~A} \left\lvert\,=\frac{f}{f_{a}}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{a}}=\frac{\mathbf{1}}{2 \pi \mathrm{R}_{f} \mathrm{C}_{\mathbf{1}}}$
At $\mathrm{f}=f_{a},|\mathrm{~A}|=1$. i.e., 0 dB and gain increases at $+20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade .
(c) Problems with ideal differentiator:
(i) At higher frequencies, it may become instable and result in oscillations.
(ii) Input impedance $\left(=1 / \omega C_{1}\right)$ decreases with increase in frequency. Thus, the circuit becomes sensitive to high frequency noise.

To avoid above problems, we use practical differentiator circuit.

## (c) Practical Differentiator:



## Fig. 8 (c) Practical differentiator circuit

Fig. 8 (c) represents a practical differentiator circuit. From figure, we write
$Z_{1}=R_{1}+\frac{1}{s C_{1}}=\frac{1+s R_{1} C_{1}}{s C_{1}} \ldots \ldots$
$Z_{f}=R_{1} \| \frac{1}{s C_{f}} \quad=\frac{R_{f} \cdot \frac{1}{s C_{f}}}{R+\frac{1}{s C_{f}}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{R_{f}}{1+s R_{f} C_{f}} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We know that $\mathrm{A}=-\frac{Z_{f}}{Z_{1}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =-\frac{R_{f}}{1+s R_{f} C_{f}} \cdot \frac{s C_{1}}{1+s R_{1} C_{1}}\{\text { from eqs. (1) and (2) }\} \\
& =-\frac{s R_{f} C_{1}}{\left(1+s R_{f} C_{f}\right)\left(1+s R_{1} C_{1}\right)}
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{R}_{1} \mathrm{C}_{1}$,
above equation becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{A}=\frac{-s R_{f} C_{1}}{\left(1+s R_{1} C_{1}\right)^{2}} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\qquad$
At steady state, $\mathrm{s}=\mathrm{j} \omega=\mathrm{j} .2 \pi \mathrm{f}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (3) becomes
$\mathrm{A}=\frac{-s R_{f} C_{1}}{(1+j 2 \pi f R 1 C 1)^{2}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{-s R_{f} C_{1}}{\left\{1+j f /\left(\frac{1}{2 \pi f R 1 C 1}\right)\right\}^{2}} \\
& =\frac{-s R_{f} C_{1}}{\left\{1+j f / f_{b}\right\}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Where $f_{b}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}}$
(d) Frequency Response of Differentiator:


Fig. 8 (d) Frequency response of ideal and practical differentiator
Fig. 8 (d) represents the frequency response of ideal and practical differentiators.
*When $\mathrm{f}<\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}$, gain increases at a rate of $20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade.
*When $\mathrm{f}>\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}$
$>$ For practical differentiator, gain decreases at a rate of -20 $d B /$ decade. This is due to $R_{1} C_{1}$ and $R_{f} C_{f}$ factors.
$>$ For ideal differentiator, gain increases at a rate of 20 $\mathrm{dB} /$ decade. This causes stability problems at high frequencies
(e) Other practical considerations:
(i) $f_{b}$ is selected such that $f_{a}<f_{b}<f_{c}$, where $f_{c}$ is unity gain bandwidth (UGB), i.e., frequency at which gain $=1$.
(ii) If $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1} \gg \mathrm{R}_{1} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$ (orR $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$ ), eq. (3) becomes

$$
\mathrm{A}=-\mathrm{sR} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1}
$$

which is the expression in ideal case.
(iii) If ' $T$ ' is the time period of input signal, it is selected such that
$\mathrm{T} \gg \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{1}$
(iv) A resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\text {Comp }}\left(=\mathrm{R}_{1} \| \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}\right)$ is connected to the non-inverting terminal to compensate for the effect of input bias current.
(f) Design Procedure:

* Choose $f_{a}=$ highest frequency of input signal.
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is given by $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{f} C_{1}}$
* Let $\mathrm{C}_{1}<1 \mu \mathrm{~F}($ say $\mathrm{C} 1=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F})$ and calculate $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ from the above formula.
* Choose $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}=10 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}$ (say) and calculate the values of $\mathrm{R}_{1}$
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}$ is given by $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}}$
* Find $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$ such that $\mathrm{R}_{1} \mathrm{C}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$


## Problem 2.4:

Design an opamp differentiator that differentiates an input signal with frequency $=100 \mathrm{~Hz}$
Solution:
(a) $f_{a}=f_{\max }=100 \mathrm{MHz}$

$$
\text { i.e., } \frac{1}{2 \pi R_{f} C_{1}}=100 \text { or } \quad \text { i.e., } \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 100 \times C 1}
$$

Choose $\mathrm{C} 1=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F} 10^{-6}$
$\therefore \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 100 \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}}=15.9 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Now choose $f_{b}=10 f_{a}=10 \times 100=1000 H z$
i.e., $\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}}=1000$
$\therefore \mathrm{R}_{1}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 1000 \times C 1}$

$$
=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 1000 \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}}=1.59 \mathrm{~K} \Omega
$$

Since $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}} \mathrm{c}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{R}_{1} \mathrm{C}_{1}$
$\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}=\frac{R_{1} C_{1}}{R_{f}}=\frac{1.59 \times 10^{3} \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}}{15.9 \times 10^{3}} 0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}$

## Integrator

Integrator is a circuit whose output is directly proportional to the time integral of input voltage.
(a) Integrator:


Fig. 9 (a) Integrator
Fig. 9 (a) represents an opamp integrator. Consider node 'a'. Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{v_{a}-v_{i}}{R_{1}}+C_{f} \frac{d\left(v_{a}-v_{o}\right)}{d t}=0 \tag{1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For an ideal opamp, there exists a virtual ground at the input of the opamp.
i.e.,

$$
v_{a}=0
$$

$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes
$-\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}} C_{f} \frac{d v_{o}}{d t}=0$
i.e., $C_{f} \frac{d v_{o}}{d t}=-\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}}$
or $\frac{d v_{o}}{d t}=\frac{-1}{R_{1} C_{f}} v_{i}$
ord $v_{o}=-\frac{1}{R_{1} C_{f}} v_{i} \mathrm{dt}$
Integrating above equation on both sides, we get
$v_{o}=\left[\frac{-1}{R_{1} C_{f}} \int_{0}^{t} v_{i} d t\right]+v_{o}(0)$
where $v_{o}(0)$ is the initial o/p voltage.
Thus, the circuit provides an o/p voltage proportional to the time integral of $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage. So, it is called an integrator. circuit. Here $\mathrm{R}_{1} \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$ is the time constant of integrator.
$\mathrm{R}_{\text {Comp }}$ is called compensating resistor. It is connected to the non-inverting terminal of opamp to minimize the effect of input bias current on $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage.
(b) Analysis in the frequency domain:

Nodal equation at node 'a' is
$\frac{v_{a}-v_{i}}{R_{1}}+C_{f} \frac{d\left(v_{a}-v_{o}\right)}{d t}=0$
In frequency domain, it is
$\frac{v_{a}-v_{i}}{R_{1}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{o}}{1 / s C_{f}}=0 \quad \ldots$
Because of virtual ground $v_{a}=0$
$\therefore \quad$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
- & \frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}}-\frac{v_{o}}{1 / s C_{f}}=0 \\
& \text { i.e., } \frac{v_{o}}{1 / s C_{f}}=\frac{v_{i}}{R_{1}} \\
& \text { i.e., } v_{o}=-\frac{v_{i}}{s R_{1} C_{f}} \cdots \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
A(s)=\frac{v_{o}(s)}{v_{i}(s)}=-\frac{1}{s R_{1} C_{f}} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

In steady state, $\mathrm{s}=\mathrm{j} \omega$
$\therefore \quad$ Eq. (3) becomes
$A(\mathrm{j} \omega)=-\frac{1}{j \omega R_{1} C_{f}}($ Since $1 / \mathrm{j}=-\mathrm{j})$
$|\mathrm{A}(\mathrm{j} \omega)|=\frac{1}{\omega R_{1} C_{f}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{1}{2 \pi f_{b} R_{1} C_{f}} \cdots \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

When gain $=1$ (i.e., 0 dB ), eq.(4) becomes

Or

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\frac{1}{2 \pi f_{b} R_{1} C_{f}}=1 \\
\mathbf{f}_{\mathbf{b}}=\frac{\mathbf{1}}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{f}}
\end{array}
$$

## (c) Problem at low frequencies

At low frequencies or atdc frequencies, $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}=0 . S o, \mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{f}}$ behaves as an open circuit. So, there is no - ve feedback. i.e., opamp operates in open loop. i.e., gain is infinite. This can be verified by putting $f_{b}=0$ in eq. (4), where we get $|A|=\infty$.
In practice, gain doesn't become infinity because $o / p$ saturates at a value $\pm V_{\text {Sat }}$, which is closer to supply voltage. But we do not want even this high gain.

Solution to this problem is a practical integrator circuit.
(d) Practical Integrator Circuit (or lossy integrator)


Fig. 9 (b) Practical Integrator
Fig. 9 (b) represents a practical integrator circuit. Since parallel combination of $R_{f}$ and $C_{f}$ dissipates some power, the circuit is also called lossy integrator.

From the circuit, we write
$\mathrm{Z}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Z}_{\mathrm{f}}=R_{1} \| \frac{1}{s C_{f}} \quad= & \frac{R_{f} \cdot \frac{1}{s C_{f}}}{R+\frac{1}{s C_{f}}} \\
& =\frac{R_{f}}{1+s R_{f} C_{f}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\operatorname{But} \frac{v_{o}(s)}{v_{i}(s)}=-\frac{Z_{f}}{Z_{1}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =-\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}\left(1+s R_{f} C_{f}\right)} \\
& =\frac{-{ }^{R_{f}} / R_{1}}{1+j \omega R_{f} C_{f}} \quad \cdots
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=\frac{-{ }^{R_{f}} / R_{1}}{1+j 2 \pi \omega R_{f} C_{f}}
$$

$$
=\frac{-{ }^{R_{f}} / R_{R_{1}}}{1+j f /\left(\frac{1}{2 \pi f R_{f} C_{f}}\right)}
$$

$$
=\frac{-{ }^{R_{f}} / R_{1}}{\left\{1+j f / f_{a}\right\}^{2}}
$$

Where $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{f} C_{f}}$
Eq. (1) $\Rightarrow \mathrm{A}|j w|=\frac{R_{f} / R_{1}}{\sqrt{1+\omega^{2} R_{f}{ }^{2} C_{f}{ }^{2}}}$

## (e) Frequency response



Fig. 9 (c) Frequency response of ideal and practical integrators
Fig. 9 (c) represents the frequency response of ideal and practical integrators
Ideal case: Here graph is a straight line with a slope of $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade. $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}$ is the frequency at which the gain of integrator is 0 dB
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{b}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{f}}$

## Practical case:

At $\mathrm{f}=0$,
$|A|=R_{f} / R_{1}$ (see graph)
$f_{a}$ is corner frequency. i.e., frequency at which the gain is $0.707 R_{f} / R_{1}$ or $-3 d B$ below $R_{f}$ / $\mathrm{R}_{1}$

At $\mathrm{f}=\mathrm{fa}$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Gain }=.707 \frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}} \quad\left(\text { Since } \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}=.707\right) \\
& \text { i.e., } \frac{R_{f} / R 1}{\sqrt{1+\omega^{2} R^{2} C^{2}}}=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{R_{f}}{R_{ \pm}} \\
& \text {i.e., } 1+\omega^{2} R_{f}^{2} C_{f}^{2}=2 \\
& \text { i.e., } \omega^{2} R_{f}^{2} C_{f}^{2}=2-1=1 \\
& \text { i.e., } \omega R_{f} C_{f}=1 \\
& \text { i.e., } 2 \pi f_{a} R_{f} C_{f}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\text { i.e., } f_{a}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{f} C_{f}}
$$

## (f) Practical considerations:

* If frequency $\mathrm{f}<\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}$, there is no integration. i.e., Circuit behaves like a simple inverting amplifier.
* If $\mathrm{f}=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}$, accuracy is $50 \%$.
* If $\mathrm{f}=10 \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{a}}$, accuracy is $99 \%$.


## AC Amplifier

Generally, opamp amplifies DC as well as AC signals. If we want only AC amplification, we should block DC signals. This is achieved by using capacitors, because a capacitor blocks DC signals.

## (a) Inverting AC amplifier:



Fig. 10 (a) Inverting AC follower
Fig. 10 (a) represents an inverting AC amplifier. capacitor C blocks DC component. Resistor ' $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ ' and Capacitor ' C ' set the lower 3 dB frequency of the amplifier.
Consider node ' $a$ '.
Nodal equation at node ' $a$ ' is
$\frac{v_{a}-v_{i}}{R_{1}+\frac{1}{s c}}+\frac{v_{a}-v_{o}}{R_{f}}=0$

Due to virtual ground for ideal opamp,
$v_{a}=0$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes
$\frac{-v_{i}}{R_{1}+\frac{1}{s C}}=\frac{v_{o}}{R_{f}}$
$\therefore \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}=\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}=\frac{-R_{f}}{R_{1}+\frac{1}{s C}}$
In the midband, C acts as a short circuit. i.e., $\frac{1}{\omega C}=0$

## (b) Non-inverting AC amplifier:



Fig. 10 (b) non-inverting AC amplifier
Fig. (b) shows a non-inverting AC amplifier. Here, $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ is added to provide a DC return path to ground.

## AC Voltage Follower:



Fig. 10 (c) AC Voltage follower

Fig. 10 (c) shows a practical AC voltage follower circuit. Capacitors $\mathrm{C}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{C}_{2}$ are chosen high so that they act as short circuits at all frequencies of operation.

Resistors $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ provide a path for DC current in to the $(+)$ terminal of opamp.
$\mathrm{C}_{2}$ acts as a boot strapping capacitor and connects $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ to $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$ for AC operation. Hence the input resistance seen by the source $\approx \frac{R_{1}}{1-A_{C L}}$ (from Miller's theorem), where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{CL}}$ is closed circuit voltage gain of the circuit. ( $\approx 1$ )

Thus, high input impedance can be obtained.

## NON-LINEAR APPLICATIONS OF OP-AMP

## COMPARATORS

A comparator is a circuit which compares a signal voltage applied at one $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ of opamp with a known reference voltage at the other input. It is basically an open loop opamp with output $\pm$ $\mathrm{V}_{\text {SAT }}$, where $\mathrm{V}_{\text {SAT }}$ is the saturation voltage of opamp. Comparators are classified as noninverting and inverting comparators.
(a) Non-Inverting Comparators.


Fig. 1 (a) Non-inverting Comparator
Fig. 1 (b) Practical Circuit
Fig. 1(a) shows a non-inverting comparator. A fixed reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ is applied at (-) terminal of opamp and a time varying voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is applied at (+) terminal. In a practical circuit, $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ is obtained by connecting a $10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ potentiometer which forms a voltage divider with supply voltages $V^{+}$and $\mathrm{V}^{-\cdot}$ as shown in Fig. 1 (b).

When $v_{i}<\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}, \quad v_{o}=-\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
When $v_{i}>\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{re}} \mathrm{f}, \quad v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$

Fig. 2 illustrates this situation. In the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ waveforms, rise time and fall time are zero. Butpractically there will be a finite rise time and fall time. i.e., o/p of comparator cannot change suddenly and sharply.

(b) Inverting Comparator:


Fig. 3 (a) Inverting Comparator
Fig. 3 (b) Practical circuit
Fig. 3(a) shows an inverting comparator. $v_{i}$ is applied to the inverting terminal of opamp and constant reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ is applied to the non-inverting terminal.

In a practical circuit shown in Fig. 3(b), a $10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ potentiometer is used to obtain $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref. }}$. It forms a voltage divider with supply voltages $\mathrm{V}^{+}$and $\mathrm{V}^{-}$

When $v_{i}<$ Vref, $\quad v_{o}=+V_{\text {Sat }}$
When $v_{i}>$ Vref, $\quad v_{o}=-V_{\text {Sat }}$
as shown in Fig. 4 (a) and 4 (b)


Fig. 4 (a)
Fig. 4 (b)

## Applications of comparators:

- Zero-crossing detector
- Window detector
- Time Marker Generator
- Phase meters
- Schmitt Tigger
- Oscillators


## Zero Crossing Detector:



Fig. 5 (a) shows an inverting zero-crossing detector. It is an inverting comparator, where $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ $=0$

If $v_{i}>0, \quad v_{o}=-V_{\text {Sat }}$
If $v_{i}<0, \quad v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
Whenever $v_{i}=0, v_{o}$ changes its state. Its $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ waveforms are shown in Fig. 5 (b).


Fig. 5 (b)

## Applications of Zero-crossing Detector:

(i) Used as Time Marker Generator
(ii) Sine wave to square wave generator
(iii) To detect and count multiple zero-crossings of an arbitrary waveform.

## SCHMITT TRIGGER

Schmitt Trigger is a comparator circuit with regenerative (i.e., + ve) feedback. Because of + ve feedback, gain increases and transfer curve becomes closer to ideal curve.


Fig. 6 (a)
Fig. 6 (b), (c) and (d
Fig. 6 (a) shows an inverting Schmitt Trigger. Let $v_{i}$ be the i/p and vo be the $o / p$ voltage of the circuit.
$\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$ triggers $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$ every time it exceeds certain voltage levels. These voltage levels are called "Upper Threshold Voltage ( $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ )" and "Lower Threshold Voltage ( $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}$ )". $\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}\right)$ is called "Hysteresis Width $\left(\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{H}}\right)$ ".

Let $v_{o}=+V_{\text {Sat. }}$
Then,the voltageat the + terminal is obtained by Superposition theorem as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{V}_{1}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}} & =\frac{V_{\text {ref }} R_{1}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}+\frac{R_{2} v_{o}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \\
& \left.=\frac{R_{1} V_{\text {ref }}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}+\frac{V_{\text {Sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \quad \ldots \ldots . \text { (1) } \quad \text { (Since } v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat. }}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

As long as $v_{i}<\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}, v_{o}$ remains $+V_{\text {Sat }}$.
When $v_{i}$ is just greater than $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}$, the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ switches to $-V_{\text {Sat }}$ and remains at this level as long as $v_{i}>\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}$ as shown in Fig. 6 (b)

## When $_{\boldsymbol{o}}=-V_{\text {Sat }}$

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{V}_{1}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}} & =\frac{V_{\text {ref }} R_{1}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}+\frac{v_{o} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \\
& =\frac{V_{r e f} R_{1}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}-\frac{V_{\text {sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \quad\left(\because v_{o}=-V_{\text {sat }}\right) \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

Eqs. (1) and (2) $\Rightarrow$
Hysteresis Width $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{H}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{2 V_{\text {sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}} \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

When $v_{i}$ is just $\left\langle\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}, v_{o}\right.$ switches from $-V_{S a t}$ to $+V_{S a t}$. Fig. 6 (c) shows this regenerative transition.

Fig. 6 (d) shows composite (complete) transfer characteristics and illustrates hysteresis loop.

## Important Points:

(i) Because of hysteresis, the circuit triggers at higher voltage for increasing signals than for decreasing signals.
(ii) $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{H}}$ is independent of $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref. }}$. See eq. (3). There is no Vref term. $\}$.
(iii) $R_{3}$ is chosen equal to $R_{1} \| R_{2}$ to compensate for input bias current.
(iv) A non-inverting Schmitt Trigger is obtained by interchanging $v_{i}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$.
(v) The most important application of Schmitt Trigger is to convert a very slowly varying $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage into a square wave $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$.

Problem 2.5: In the circuit of the Schmitt Trigger shown in Fig. 6 (a), $R_{1}=50 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{2}=100$ $\mathrm{K} \Omega, \mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}=0 \mathrm{~V}, v_{i}=1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {pp }}$ (peak-to-peak) sine wave and saturation voltage $= \pm 14 \mathrm{~V}$.
Determine upper and lower threshold voltages. Also calculate hysteresis width.
Solution:
Given that $\mathrm{R}_{1}=50 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{2}=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{~V}_{\text {ref }}=0 \mathrm{~V}, v_{i}=1 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{pp}}$ (peak-to-peak) sine wave.
Upper Threshold Voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}=\frac{R_{1} V_{\text {ref }}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}+\frac{V_{\text {Sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$

$$
=0+\frac{V_{\text {sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}\left(\because \mathrm{~V}_{\text {ref }}=0\right)
$$

$$
=\frac{14 \times 100}{50000+100}=28 \mathrm{mV}
$$

Lower Threshold Voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}=0-\frac{V_{\text {Sat }} R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$

$$
=-\frac{14 \times 100}{50000+100}=-28 \mathrm{~V}
$$

Hysteresis width $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{H}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{UT}}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LT}}$

$$
=28 \mathrm{mV}-(-28 \mathrm{mV})=56 \mathrm{mV}
$$

## SQUARE WAVE GENERATOR

## (or ASTABLE MULTIVIBRATOR)

A square wave generator is also called astable multivibrator or free running oscillator. It is shown in Fig. 7 (a). Here opamp operates in saturation region. Fig. 7 (b) show the waveforms for $v_{o}$ and $v_{c}$, where $v_{o}$ is o/p of the circuit and $v_{c}$ is voltage across capacitor C . Let the voltage at ( + ) terminal of opamp be $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$.


Fig. 7(a)
Square wave Generator
A fraction $\beta$ of $v_{o}$ is feedback to $(+)$ terminal, where $\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$. Here $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ act as voltage divider. $v_{o}$ is also feedback through R to the $(-)$ terminal. Whenever voltage $v_{c}$ at $(-)$ terminal exceeds $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$, opamp changes its state, since it acts as a comparator.

## Operation:

Let $v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
$\therefore \mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}=\beta v_{o}=+\beta \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
Now capacitor C starts charging towards $v_{o}$ though R . When voltage across capacitor just exceeds $+\beta v_{o}$, opamp o/p switches to $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$ and the cycle repeats.

## Derivation for time period ' $T$ ' of the $\mathbf{o} / \mathrm{p}$

We know that capacitor charge equation is given by
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=v_{f}+\left(v_{i}-v_{f}\right) e^{-t / R C}$
where $v_{i}=$ Initial voltage
$v_{f}=$ Final (target) voltage
Consider $1^{\text {st }}$ half cycle. i.e., $v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
Here $v_{i}=-\beta V_{\text {Sat }} \quad$ and $v_{f}=+V_{\text {Sat }}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{c}(\mathrm{t}) & =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}+\left(-\beta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}\right) e^{-t / R C} \\
& =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}^{-}} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}(1+\beta) e^{-t / R C} \ldots \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

At $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{T}_{1}, v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\beta \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes
$\beta \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}=\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}-\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}(1+\beta) e^{-T_{1} / R C}$

$$
=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}\left\{1-(1+\beta) e^{-T_{1} / R C}\right\}
$$

i.e., $\beta=1-(1+\beta) e^{-T_{1} / R C}$
i.e., $(1+\beta) e^{-T_{1} / R C}=1-\beta$

Ore $e^{-T_{1} / R C}=\frac{1-\beta}{1+\beta}$
Or $\quad e^{T_{1} / R C}=\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}$
Taking logarithms on both sides of above equation, we get

$$
\frac{T_{1}}{R C}=\ln \left\{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}\right\}
$$

OrT $T_{1}=$ RC. $\ln \left\{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}\right\}$
Total time period $\mathrm{T}=2 \mathrm{~T}_{1}$
i.e., $\mathrm{T}=2 \mathrm{RC}$. $\ln \left\{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}\right\}$
and frequency of output $=\frac{1}{T}$

Problem 2.6: In the square wave oscillator of Fig. 7 (a), calculate the frequency of oscillations if $\mathrm{R}_{2}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{1}=11.6 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ and $\mathrm{C}=0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}$.
Solution:
We know that the time period of the square wave output is

$$
\mathrm{T}=2 \mathrm{RC} \cdot \ln \left\{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}\right\}
$$

Given that $\mathrm{R}_{2}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{1}=11.6 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$;

$$
\mathrm{C}=0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.01 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}=10^{-8} \mathrm{~F}
$$

$$
\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}=\frac{10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega}{(10+11.6) \mathrm{K} \Omega}=\frac{10}{21.6}
$$

$$
\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}=\frac{1+10 / 21.6}{1-10 / 21.6}
$$

$$
=2.7241
$$

$$
\therefore \quad \mathrm{T}=2 \times 100 \times 1000 \times 10^{-8} \times \ln (2.7241)
$$

$$
=2.04 \mathrm{mSec}
$$

Frequency $=\frac{1}{T}=\frac{1}{2.04 \times 10^{-3}}=0.4902 \mathrm{KHz}$
Problem 2.7: Design a square wave oscillator for $\mathrm{f}=1 \mathrm{KHz}$. The opamp is a 741 with supply voltages $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$.

## Solution:

Consider Fig. 7 (a)
Let $\mathrm{R} 1=\mathrm{R} 2=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Then $\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}=\frac{1}{2}$
We know that the period of square wave $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is

$$
\mathrm{T}=2 \mathrm{RC} \cdot \ln \left\{\frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta}\right\}
$$

Chose $\mathrm{C}=0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}=10^{-8} \mathrm{~F}$
Since $\mathrm{f}=1000 \mathrm{~Hz}, \mathrm{~T}=\frac{1}{1000}=10^{-3} \mathrm{Sec}$
$\therefore 10^{-3}=2 \times \operatorname{Rx~} 10^{-8} \times \ln \left\{\frac{1+\frac{1}{2}}{1-\frac{1}{2}}\right\}$
$=2 \mathrm{R} \times 10^{-8} \times \ln 3$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\therefore \mathrm{R} & =\frac{10^{-3}}{2 \times 10^{-8} \times \ln 3} \\
& =0.45512 \times 10^{-5} \\
& =45.512 \mathrm{~K} \Omega
\end{aligned}
$$

## To make o/p independent of supply voltage:

Amplitude of $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ depends on power supply voltage. To make the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ independent of supply voltage, we use 2 back-to-back connected Zener diodes as shown in Fig. 7 (b). Fig. 7 (c) shows the waveform for $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$.


Fig. 7 (b) Zener diode Circuit
Fig. 7 (c) $\mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{o}}$ waveform

When $v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat, }}$ diode $\mathrm{Z}_{1}$ breaks down and $\mathrm{Z}_{2}$ conducts.
$\therefore v_{o}=v_{Z_{1}}+v_{D}$
When $v_{o}=-V_{\text {Sat }}$
$\mathrm{Z}_{1}$ is forward biased and $\mathrm{Z}_{2}$ is reverse biased and operates in breakdown reion.

$$
\therefore v_{o}=-\left(v_{Z_{2}}+v_{D}\right)
$$

Where $v_{Z_{1}}$ and $v_{Z_{2}}$ are Zener breakdown voltages of $Z_{1}$ and $Z_{2} . V_{D}$ is the forward bias voltage drop across each diode.

Resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{sc}}$ in Fig. 7 (b) is used to limit the currents drawn from opamp to

$$
\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{sc}}=\frac{V_{S a t}-V Z}{R_{s c}}\left\{\text { if } v_{Z_{1}}=v_{Z_{2}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Z}}\right\}
$$

The circuit works well at audio frequencies. At high frequencies, operation is limited by slew rate of opamp.

If two Zener diodes are identical, $v_{Z_{1}}=v_{Z_{2}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Z}}$

## Then we get a symmetrical square wave. Otherwise

## (i. e., $v_{Z_{1}} \neq v_{Z_{2}}$ ), we get an assymetric square wave $\mathbf{o} / \mathbf{p}$

## TRIANGULAR WAVE GENERATOR

Fig. 8 (a) shows a triangular wave generator.Here $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ generates a square wave with output $v_{o}$. It is integrated by $\mathrm{A}_{2}$ to get triangular wave with output $v_{0}$. Fig. 8 (b) shows the waveforms for $v_{o}$ and $v_{0}$.


Fig. 8 (a)
Fig. 8 (b)
$v_{o}$ is again feedback to (-) input of $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ through voltage divider $\mathrm{R}_{2} \mathrm{R}_{3}$.
Amplitude of $v_{o}{ }^{\prime}= \pm \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$

## Operation of the circuit:

Let the initial o/p of comparator $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ is $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sata} .} \mathrm{A}_{2}$ integrates this and gives $\mathrm{a}-\mathrm{ve}$ going ramp as shown in fig. 8 (b). Thus, upper end of $R_{2} R_{3}$ is at an $+V_{\text {Sat }}$ and lower end is at - ve going ramp. The voltage at point $\mathrm{P}\left(\right.$ i.e., $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{P}}$ ) becomes $<0 \mathrm{~V}$, when - ve going ramp reaches a voltage $-\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }}$ (say). This switches o/p of A 1 to $-\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat. }}$. Theno/p of $\mathrm{A}_{2}$ increases in + ve direction. Again, when voltage at P becomes just more than $0, \mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of A 1 switches to $+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$. The cycle repeats and generates a triangular waveform.

Frequency of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave is same as that of square wave. But amplitude of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave depends on $R C$ value of integrator $A_{2}$ and voltage level of $A_{1}$. The o/p of $A_{1}$ can be controlled by using appropriate Zener diodes.

## Derivation for Time period/Frequency:

When $v_{0}{ }^{\prime}=+V_{\text {Sat }}$
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{P}}=-\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }} \cdot \frac{R_{3}}{R_{2}+R_{3}}+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}} \cdot \frac{R_{2}}{R_{2}+R_{3}} \ldots \ldots$ (1)
At $t=t_{1}, V_{P}=0$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes
$-\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }} \cdot \frac{R_{3}}{R_{2}+R_{3}}=-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}} \cdot \frac{R_{2}}{R_{2}+R_{3}}$
i.e., $-\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }}=-\frac{R_{2}}{R_{3}} \mathrm{~V}_{\text {Sat }} \ldots \ldots$

Similarly, at $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t} 2$, $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of A1 switches from $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$ to $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$ and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of A2 is $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{ramp}}$.
So eq. (1) $\Rightarrow \mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }}=-\frac{R_{2}}{R_{3}}\left(-\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}\right)=+\frac{R_{2}}{R_{3}}\left(\mathrm{~V}_{\text {Sat }}\right) \ldots$
From eqs. (2) and (3), we get
peak to peak amplitude of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{o(p p)} & =+\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }}-\left(-\mathrm{V}_{\text {ramp }}\right) \\
& =2 \frac{R_{2}}{R_{3}} \mathrm{~V}_{\text {Sat }} \ldots \ldots(4) \tag{4}
\end{align*}
$$

Basic integrator equation is
$v_{o}=\frac{-1}{R C} \int v_{i} d t$
$v_{o}=v_{o(p p)}, \mathrm{R}=\mathrm{R}_{1}, \mathrm{C}=\mathrm{C}_{1}$
From Fig. 8 (b), we see that, for $2^{\text {nd }}$ half cycle $\frac{T}{2}$, o/p switches from $-V_{\text {ramp }}$ to $+V_{\text {ramp }}$,
$v_{i}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$
i.e., eq. (5) $\Rightarrow$
$v_{o(p p)}=\frac{-1}{R_{1} C_{1}} \int_{0}^{\frac{T}{2}}\left(-V_{\text {Sat }}\right) d t$
$=\frac{V_{\text {sat }}}{R_{1} C_{1}} \cdot\left(\frac{T}{2}\right)$
$2 \frac{R_{2}}{R_{3}} \mathrm{~V}_{\text {Sat }}=\frac{V_{\text {sat }} \cdot T}{2 R_{1} C_{1}} \quad$ using eq. (4)
i.e., $\mathrm{T}=\frac{4 R_{1} R_{2} C_{1}}{R_{3}}$
$\therefore$ Frequency of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave $=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{1}{T}=\frac{R_{3}}{4 R_{1} R_{2} C_{1}}$
Problem 2.8: For the circuit in Fig. 8 (a), $\mathrm{R}_{1}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{2}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{C}_{1}=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}, \mathrm{R}_{3}=40 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$. Find the frequency of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave.

Solution:
Frequency of $\Delta^{\text {lar }}$ wave $=\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{R_{3}}{4 R_{1} R_{2} C_{1}}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{40 \times 10^{3}}{4 \times 10 \times 1000 \times 10 \times 1000 \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}} \\
& =1000 \mathrm{~Hz}=1 \mathrm{KHz}
\end{aligned}
$$

## MONOSTABLE MULTIVIBRATOR

It has one stable state and one quasi (semi) stable state. When a triggering pulse is given, it generates single o/p pulse. Width of this pulse depends on external components connected to opamp.


Fig. 9 (a)
Fig. 9 (a) represents a modified form of astable multivibrator. Diode D1 acts as a clamper. When $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$, it clamps the capacitor voltage $v_{c}$ to 0.7 V .

Consider points A and B.
A - ve going pulse is applied at A. It passes through differentiator $\mathrm{R}_{4} \mathrm{C}_{4}$ and diode $\mathrm{D}_{2}$ (clipper) and gives a - ve going triggering pulse at point B. This pulse is applied to the (+) input terminal of opamp. Here $v_{o}$ is $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of circuit.

In steady state, let $v_{o}=+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$
So $\mathrm{D}_{1}$ conducts and clamps $v_{c}$ to 0.7 V .
The voltage at the (+) input terminal through voltage divider $R_{1} R_{2}$ is $+\beta V_{S a t}$.
Now, let a trigger of negative magnitude ' $\mathrm{V}_{1}$ ' is applied to $(+$ ) input terminal, so that effective signal at this terminal is $<0.7 \mathrm{~V}$
i.e., $\left\{\beta \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}+(-\mathrm{V} 1)\right\}<0.7 \mathrm{~V}$

So, o/p of opamp will switch from $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$ to $-\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$.
Now $D_{1}$ will be reverse biased. So, capacitor ' $C$ ' charges exponentially to $-V_{\text {Sat }}$ through resistor R .

The voltage at (+) input terminal, now, is $-\beta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$
when $v_{c}$ just crosses $-\beta \mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$, opamp o/p switches back to $+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{Sat}}$.
Then C starts charging to $+\mathrm{V}_{\text {Sat }}$ through R until $v_{c}=0.7 \mathrm{~V}$. i.e., until $v_{c}$ is clamped to 0.7 V .
Fig. 9 (b), 9 (c) and 9 (d) show various waveforms.

## Derivation for pulse width ' $T$ ':

We know that capacitor charge equation is given by
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=v_{f}+\left(v_{i}-v_{f}\right) e^{-t / R C}$
where $v_{i}=$ Initial value
$v_{f}=$ Final (target) value
For the circuit, $v_{f}=-V_{S a t}$
$v_{i}=V_{D}$ (diode forward voltage)
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=-V_{S a t}+\left(V_{D}+V_{S a t}\right) e^{-t / R C}$
But, at $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{T}_{1}, v_{c}=-\beta V_{\text {Sat }}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes
$-\beta V_{\text {sat }}=-V_{\text {sat }}+V_{\text {sat }}\left(1+\frac{V_{D}}{V_{\text {Sat }}}\right) e^{-T / R C}$
i.e., $-\beta=-1+\left(1+\frac{V_{D}}{V_{\text {Sat }}}\right) e^{-T / R C}$
$\left(1+\frac{V_{D}}{V_{S a t}}\right) e^{-T / R C}=1-\beta$
i.e., $e^{-T / R C}=\frac{1-\beta}{\left(1+\frac{V_{D}}{V_{S a t}}\right)}$
$e^{T / R C}=\frac{1+V_{D} / V_{\text {Sat }}}{1-\beta}$
Taking logarithms on both sides, we get
$T / R C=\ln \left\{\frac{1+{ }^{V_{D}} / V_{\text {Sat }}}{1-\beta}\right\}$
i.e., $\mathbf{T}=\mathbf{R C} \ln \left\{\frac{1+{ }^{V_{D}} / \boldsymbol{V}_{\text {sat }}}{1-\boldsymbol{\beta}}\right\}$
where $\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$
If $V_{S a t} \gg V_{D}$ and $R_{1}=R_{2}$
$\beta=\frac{1}{2}=0.5$
$\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{RC} \ln \frac{1}{1-0.5}=\mathrm{RC} \ln 2=0.69 \mathrm{RC}$
So approximate formula isT= $\mathbf{0 . 6 9 R C}$

## Recovery time:

$v_{c}$ again reaches $V_{D}$ at $\mathrm{T}^{\prime}$, Where T ' $>\mathrm{T}$. Then ( $\mathrm{T}^{\prime}-\mathrm{T}$ ) is called 'recovery time'.
A second triggering pulse can be given only after recovery time. Otherwise, operation is ambiguous.

Note1: For proper monostable operation

$$
\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{p}} \ll \mathrm{~T}
$$

Where $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{p}}$ and T are widths of triggering pulse and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ respectively.
Note2: Monostable multivibrator is also called "Gating Circuit" or "One shot".
Problem 2.9: Design a monostable multivibrator with trigger pulse shaping which will drive a LED "ON" for 0.5 Second each time it is pulsed.

## Solution:

Pulse width T of a monostable multivibrator is given by
$\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{RC} \ln \left\{\frac{1+{ }^{V_{D}} / V_{\text {sat }}}{1-\beta}\right\}$
where $\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$
Given that $\mathrm{T}=0.5 \mathrm{Sec}$
If $V_{S a t} \gg V_{D}, \quad 1+V_{D} / V_{S a t}=1$
Let $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\mathrm{R}_{2}$
$\therefore \beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}=\frac{1}{2}=0.5$
$\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{RC} \ln \frac{1}{1-0.5}=\mathrm{RC} \ln 2=0.69 \mathrm{RC}$
Choose $\mathrm{R}=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Then $\mathrm{C}=\frac{T}{0.69 \mathrm{R}}$
$=\frac{0.5}{0.69 \times 100 \times 10^{3}}=$

## Sample and Hold Circuit

A Sample and Hold circuit samples an $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal and holds on to its last sampled value until $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ is sampled again.


Fig. 10 (a) Sample and Hole circuit
Fig. 10 (b) Waveforms

Fig. 10 (a) represents a sample and hold circuit. n-channel E-MOSFET acts as a switch. It is controlled by control voltage $v_{c}$. $v_{i}$ is the analog $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage to be sampled. $v_{i}$ is applied to the Drain (D) of MOSFET and $v_{c}$ is applied to the Gate (G) of MOSFET. Capacitor ' C ' stores the charge.

## When $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=+\mathrm{ve}:$

The MOSFET is ON and C charges to the instantaneous value of $v_{i}$ with a time constant $=\left(R_{o}+r_{D S(O N)}\right) \mathrm{C}$
where $R_{o}$ is the o/p resistance of $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ and $r_{D S(O N)}$ is the ON resistance of MOSFET.
Thus, $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage $v_{i}$ appears across C and then at the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of voltage follower $\mathrm{A}_{2}$

## When $\boldsymbol{v}_{\boldsymbol{c}}=0$ :

MOSFET is OFF. C now faces the high $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ impedance of voltage follower $\mathrm{A}_{2}$. So, it can't discharge. C holds the voltage across it. Fig. 10 (b) shows various waveforms.

Sample Period $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{S}}$ :It is the time during which voltage across C becomes $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}$.
Hold Period $\mathbf{T}_{\mathbf{H}}$ : Time during which voltage across C is held constant.
Note: Control voltage frequency $\geq 2$ * input frequency

## Applications of Sample and Hold Circuit:

- Digital interfacing,
- ADC systems
- Pulse Code Modulation (PCM) Systems


## ANALOG MULTIPLIER



Fig. 11: Analog Multiplier
Fig. 11 shows the symbol of analog multiplier with 2 input signals $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{y}}$. Output is the product of these two inputs divided by reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref. }}$. Thus, the o/p is the scaled version of x and y inputs. The $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage is given by

$$
\mathrm{vo}=\frac{v_{x} v_{y}}{V_{r e f}}
$$

Normally $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ is set to 10 mV .
So, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{v_{x} v_{y}}{10}$
As long as

$$
v_{x}<\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }} \text { and } \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{y}}<\mathrm{Vref},
$$

the output of the multiplier will not saturate. Power supply voltage can range from $\pm 8 \mathrm{~V}$ to
$\pm 18 \mathrm{~V}$. For 741 opamp it is $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$.Squaring a signal
Quadrants of operation:If both inputs re +ve , the IC is said to be a one quadrant multiplier. If one input is held positive and other input is allowed to swing either +ve or ve, it is called two quadrant operation. If both inputs are allowed to swing either +ve and ve, the IC is called a fourquadrant multiplier.

## Applications of Analog Multiplier:

i. Frequency doubling
ii. Measurement of real power
iii. Detecting phase angle between 2 signals
iv. Multiplying 2 analog signals
v. Dividing one signal by other
vi. Finding square root of a signal
vii. Squaring a signal

## ANALOG DIVIDER

Fig. 12 shows an analog divider circuit.


Fig. 12: Multiplier IC configured as analog divider
Here, the multiplier element is placed in opamp's feedback loop.
Let $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{x}}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{y}}$ be the input signals.
Then $v_{o}=-V_{\text {ref }} \frac{v_{x}}{v_{y}}$

## Derivation of above result:

For ideal opamp, no current flows through ( + ) terminal.
So, From figure, $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{z}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{A}}$
Also, $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{Z}}=\frac{v_{Z}-0}{R}$

$$
=\frac{v_{z}}{R} \quad \ldots . . \text { (2) }
$$

The o/p voltage of multiplier is given by
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{A}}=\frac{v_{x} v_{y}}{V_{\text {ref }}}=\frac{v_{x} v_{o}}{V_{\text {ref }}}\left(\right.$ Since $\left.v_{y}=v_{o}\right)$
But $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{A}}=\frac{0-V_{A}}{R}$

$$
=\frac{-V_{A}}{R}
$$

$$
=-\frac{v_{x} v_{o}}{v_{r e f} R} \quad \ldots . \text { (4) using eq. (3) }
$$

From figure, $V_{z}=I_{z} R$ from eq. (2)
$=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{A}} \mathrm{R}$ from eq. (1)
$=-\frac{v_{x} v_{o}}{v_{\text {ref }}}$ (using eq. (4))
i.e., $v_{o}=-\mathbf{V}_{\text {ref }} \frac{v_{z}}{v_{x}}$

Note: division by 0 is prohibited. i.e., $v_{x}$ can't be zero.
Application: Multiplier IC is used for squaring a signal and divider circuit is used for finding square root of the signal.

## LOGARITHMIC AMPLIFIER

Logarithmic Amplifier (log-amp) is defined as an amplifier circuit whose $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is directly proportional to the logarithm of the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$.


Fig. 13 (a) : Log amplifier
Fig 13. (a) shows a fundamental log-amp circuit, where a grounded base transistor is placed in the feedback path of an opamp.

Let us assume an ideal opamp. i.e., there exists a virtual ground at the input of opamp. So, collector is placed at virtual ground. Since base is also grounded, the transistor acts similar to a diode.
i.e., $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{E}}=I_{s}\left(e^{q V_{e} / k T}\right)$

For a grounded base transistor, $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{C}}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{E}}$
i.e., $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{C}}=I_{S}\left(e^{q V_{E} / k T}\right)$
where $I_{s}=$ emitter saturation current $=$ Reverse saturation

$$
\text { current of diode }=10^{-13} \mathrm{~A}
$$

$\mathrm{k}=$ Botzmann's constant
$\mathrm{T}=$ Absolute temperature (in ${ }^{0} \mathrm{~K}$ )
$\therefore \frac{I_{C}}{I_{S}}=\left(e^{q V_{E} / k T}\right)$
Or $e^{q V_{e} / k T}=\frac{I_{C}}{I_{s}}+1 \approx \frac{I_{C}}{I_{s}} \quad\left(\right.$ Since $\left.\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{s}} \approx 10^{-13} \mathrm{~A}, I_{C}>I_{S}\right)$
Taking natural logarithms on both sides, we get
$q V_{E} / k T=\ln \left(\frac{I_{C}}{I_{s}}\right)$
Or $V_{E}=\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{I_{C}}{I_{s}}\right) \ldots$ (1)
From Fig.
$\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{C}}=\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1}}$ and $V_{E}=-\mathrm{V}_{\text {o }}$
Substituting the values of $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{C}}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{E}}$ in eq. (1), we get

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1} I_{\mathrm{s}}}\right) \\
=-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{i}}{V_{\text {ref }}}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

where $V_{\text {ref }}={ }_{\text {RIIs }}$
Thus, the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage is directly proportional to the logarithm of $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage
Note: $\log _{10} \mathrm{X}=0.4343 \ln \mathrm{X}$
This circuit has a problem. The emitter saturation current $I_{s}$ varies from transistor to transistor. It also depends on temperature. Hence stable reference voltage $V_{\text {ref }}$ cannot be obtained.

This problem can be avoided by using the modified circuit shown in Fig.


## Fig. 13 (b): Modified log-amp

Here the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ is applied to one $\log$-amp while reference voltage is applied to another log-amp. The 2 transistors are integrated close together in the same silicon wafer. This provides a close march of saturation currents and ensures good thermal tracking.

Let Is1 = Is2 = Is
Then
$\mathrm{V}_{1}=-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$ and
$\mathrm{V}_{2}=-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$
So, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=\mathrm{V}_{2}-\mathrm{V}_{1}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&=\frac{k T}{q}\left[\ln \left(\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)-\ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)\right] \\
&=\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left[\left(\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right) /\left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)\right] \\
&=\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left[\frac{V_{i}}{R_{1} I_{s}} \cdot \frac{R_{1} I_{s}}{V_{r e f}}\right] \\
& \quad= \frac{k T}{q} \ln \left[\frac{V_{i}}{V_{r e f}}\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, reference voltage is now set with a single external voltage source. Its dependence on device and temperature was removed. The voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is still dependent on temperature and is directly proportional to T . This is compensated by the last opamp stage $\mathrm{A}_{4}$ which provides a non-inverting gain of

$$
\left(1+\frac{R_{2}}{R_{T C}}\right) .
$$

Now Vo comp $=\left(1+\frac{R_{2}}{R_{T C}}\right) \cdot \frac{k T}{q} \ln \left[\frac{V_{i}}{V_{\text {ref }}}\right]$
where $R_{T C}$ is a temperature sensitive resistance with a positive coefficient of temperature (sensistor) so that slope of equation becomes constant as temperature changes.

## ANTILOG AMPLIFIER



Fig. 14: Antilog Amplifier

Fig. 14 shows an antilog amplifier. The input $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is applied to the base of transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ through the voltage divider $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{TC}}$. The output $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is feedback to the ( - ) input of $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ through the resistor $\mathrm{R}_{1}$. The base to emitter voltage of transistors $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ can be written as
$V_{Q 1 B-E}=\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{o}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$
and $V_{Q 2 B-E}=\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$
Since the base of $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ is tied to ground, we get
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{A}}=-V_{Q 1 B-E}=-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{o}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$
the base voltage $V_{B}$ of $Q_{2}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}=\left\{\frac{R_{T C}}{R_{2}+R_{T C}}\right\} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

The voltage at the emitter of $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
V_{Q 2 B-E} & =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{B}}+V_{Q 2 E-B} \\
& \left.=\left\{\frac{R_{T C}}{R_{2}+R_{T C}}\right\} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{i}}-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{S}}\right) \ldots \ldots \text { (5) } \quad \text { \{using eqs. (2) and (4) }\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

But emitter voltage of $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ is $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{A}}$.
i.e., $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{A}}=V_{Q 2 B-E} \ldots \ldots$ (6)

Or $-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{o}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)=\left\{\frac{R_{T C}}{R_{2}+R_{T C}}\right\} V_{i}-\frac{k T}{q} \ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)$
$\operatorname{Or}\left\{\frac{R_{T C}}{R_{2}+R_{T C}}\right\} \mathrm{Vi}=-\frac{k T}{q}\left[\ln \left(\frac{V_{o}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)-\ln \left(\frac{V_{r e f}}{R_{1} I_{s}}\right)\right]$
Or
$\frac{q}{k T} \cdot\left\{\frac{R_{T C}}{R_{2}+R_{T C}}\right\} \mathrm{Vi}=\ln \left(\frac{V_{o}}{V_{\text {ref }}}\right)$

## Question Bank on Unit-2.

1. Draw the circuit diagram of a non-inverting/Inverting amplifier.Explain its operation. Derive an expression for its closed loop voltage gain.
2. Describe the operation of a voltage follower.
3. Describe an inverting adder with three inputs and derive an expression for its output.
4. Describe the operation of V to I and I to V converters.
5. With the help of a neat diagram explain the operation of an instrumentation amplifier and derive necessary expression for its output.
6. Draw and explain the operation of a practical Differentiator/Integrator.

Describe its frequency response characteristics
7. With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of an inverting/non-inverting comparator.
8. With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of an astable multivibrator (Square wave generator).
9. With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of a monostable multivibrator.
10.With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of a triangular wave form generator.
11. With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of a Schmitt Trigger circuit.
12.Explain an (a) Analog multiplier (b) Analog divider.
13. With the help of a neat circuit diagram and waveforms, explain the operation of a sample and hold circuit.

## 2 Marks Questions

1. What are the applications of V-I and I-V converters??
2. Describe a voltage follower.
3. Mention the applications of analog multiplier.
4. What are the 4 quadrants of an analog multiplier?
5. What are the applications of comparators?
6. What are the applications of zero-crossing detector?
7. Why back-to-back connected Zener diodes are used in the output of a square wave generator?
8. What is recovery time in a monostable multivibrator? What is its significance?
9. Define 'Sample period and 'hold period in case of a sampling and hold ciruit.
10.What are the applications of Sample and Hold Circuit?
11.Draw the frequency response of ideal and practical integrator.
12.What are the problems with a simple differentiator?
10. What are the problems with a simple integrator?
11. What are the applications of V-I converter?

15 .Why compensating resistor is used?

## Objective Questions

1. Expression of gain for the gain of an inverting amplifier is $\qquad$
(a) $-\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
(b) $1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$ (a) $\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
(b) $-\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}\right)$
2. Expression of gain for the gain of a non-inverting amplifier is $\qquad$
(a) $-\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}(\mathbf{b}) \mathbf{1}+\frac{\boldsymbol{R}_{f}}{\boldsymbol{R}_{i}}$ (a) $\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
(b) $-\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}\right)$
3. Floating load means
(a) Load impedance is shorted (b) Load impedance is open circuited (c) One end of it is grounded (iv) No end is grounded.
4. --------- is used in low voltage ac and dc voltmeters.
(a) V-I converter(b) I-V converter (c) Any one (d) none
5. ----------- has problems at high frequencies.
(a) Differentiator(b) Integrator (c) Both (d) None
6. ----------- has problems at low frequencies.
(a) Differentiator (b) Integrator (c) Both (d) None
7. For an ideal differentiator, when $f>f_{b}$, gain changes at a rate of ------
(a) $\mathbf{+ 2 0} \mathbf{d B}$ per decade (b) -20 dB per decade (c) Gain is constant (d) none
8. For an inverting amplifier, the phase angle between input and output is
(a) $0^{\circ}$ (b) $90^{\circ}$ (c) $\mathbf{1 8 0}^{\mathbf{0}}$ (d) None
9. For a non-inverting amplifier, the phase angle between input and output is (a) $\mathbf{0}^{\mathbf{0}}$ (b) $90^{\circ}$ (c) $180^{\circ}$ (d) None
10. Which passive component blocks dc component
(a) R (b) L (c) C (d) None
11.What is the application of a comparator?
(a) Zero-crossing detector (b) Phase meters (c) Schmitt Trigger (d) All
11. A free running oscillator means --------
(a) An astable multivibrator (b) A monostable multivibrator (c) A Schmitt Trigger
(d) A Triangular wave generator
12. Which device is used in sample and hold circuit?
(a) Diode (b) Transistor (c) FET (d) MOSFET
13. Which device is used for squaring a given signal?
(a) Analog divider (b) Analog multiplier (c) Differentiator (d) Integrator
14. What is the output of an integrator for a square wave input?
(a) Series of pulses (b) Sinewave (c) Square wave (d) Triangular wave
16.If $f=10 f_{a}$, accuracy of an integrator is ------- is
(a) $99 \%$
(b) $100 \%$
(c) $0 \%$
(d) $50 \%$
17.In Sample and hold circuit, the time during which voltage across $C$ becomes $v_{i}$ is called
(a)Hold period (b)Sample Period(c) Time period (d) None
15. Sample and hold circuit is used in
(a) Digital interfacing (b) ADC Systems (c) PCM systems (d) All
16. Which of the following is correct?
(a) An analog multiplier is used to realize an analog divider (b) An analog divider is used to realize an analog multiplier (c) Both are correct (d) None of (a) and (b) are correct
20.The voltages to be added in aninverting summer are applied to the ----- terminal of OP-AMP.
(a) Supply(b) Non-inverting (c) Inverting(d) None

Note: III UNIT Notes given in class

## Question Bank on Unit-3

## (Active Filters)

## Big Questions

1. Derive an expression for the Transfer function of First order LPF/HPF
2. Derive an expression for the Transfer function of Second order LPF/HPF
3. Problem on the design of LPF and HPF.
4. What are active filters and passive filters? What are the advantages of active filters over passive filters?
5. (a) What is a band pass filter (BPF)? Derive an expression for Transfer Function of a wideband BPF.
(b) Problem
6. What is the necessity of all pass filter? Draw its circuit diagram and derive an expression for its $\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}$. Comment on the phase shift generated by all pass filter.

## 2 Marks Questions

1. What are the advantages of active filters over passive filters?
2. What is the difference between BPF and BRF?
3. Draw the frequency response of first order LPF/HPF/BPF/BRF
4. Draw the frequency response of Second order LPF/HPF.
5. What is the application of all pass filters?
6. Write the expression of magnitude of Transfer function of First order LPF/HPF
7. What is the difference between wide and narrow BPF?
8. What is the difference between wide and narrow BPF?
9. Write the expression of magnitude of Transfer function of Second order LPF/HPF. 10. Write the expressions for $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}$, Bandwidth and Q factor for a BPF.

## Objective Questions

21. Active filters used in phase correction in analog systems are ------ filters.
(a) Low pass
(b) High pass
(c) Band pass
(d) All pass
22. The roll off rate for $2^{\text {nd }}$ order HPF is
(a) - $30 \mathrm{~dB} / \operatorname{decade}(\mathrm{b})-\mathbf{4 0} \mathbf{~ d B} /$ decade (c) $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade(d) $-10 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade
23. The roll off rate for $2^{\text {nd }}$ order LPF is
(a) - $30 \mathrm{~dB} / \operatorname{decade}(\mathrm{b})-40 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade (c) $-20 \mathrm{~dB} / \operatorname{decade}(\mathrm{d})-10 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade
24. The magnitude of transfer function of fist order LPF isAns: (b)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$ (b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
25. The magnitude of transfer function of fist order HPF isAns:(a)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
26. The magnitude of transfer function of Second order LPF isAns:(d)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
27. The magnitude of transfer function of second order HPF isAns:(c)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$ (c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
28. The damping factor of a Butterworth filter is
(a) $1.06^{( }$b) 1.73 (c) $\mathbf{1 . 4 4 ( d ) . 7 0 7}$
29. First order BPF is a cascade of first order------- followed by first order ------ respectively.
(a) HPF, LPF (b) LPF, LPF (c) HPF, HPF (d) LPF, HPF
30. Expression for the $f_{o}$ of BPF is --------
(a) $f_{h}+f_{l}$ (b) $f_{h} f_{l}$ (c) $\sqrt{\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{h}} \boldsymbol{f}_{l}}$ (d) $f_{h}-f_{l}$

## UNIT-3

## ACTIVE FILTERS

## Electrical Filter:

An Electrical Filter is a circuit that passes signals of specified frequencies and attenuates (rejects) signals of frequencies outside this band. Based on processing techniques, electrical filters are classified as analog filters and digital filters. Based on the type of elements used analog filters are classified as passive and active filters.

Passive Filters: (RC filters and LC filters)
They use passive components ( $\mathrm{R}, \mathrm{L}$ and C). LC filters (also called crystal filters) have high quality factor ' Q '. So, thy produce stable operation at high frequencies.
$\mathbf{L C}$ filters are not preferred at audio and low frequencies. It is because
> Inductors are bulky (large in size and heavy)
$>$ They are costly.
$>$ Stray magnetic fields are present due to magnetic coupling.
Thus, RC filters are used at audio and low frequencies.

Active Filters: They use opamps, resistors and capacitors. Here opamps are active components and $\mathrm{R} \& \mathrm{C}$ are passive components.

## Advantages of active filters over passive filters:

- Opamps provide large gain. So, $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal is not attenuated as in passive filters.
- Opamps provide high $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ impedance and low $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ impedance. So, they do not cause loading of source and load.
- Because of high $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ impedance, we can use large resistor values. This reduces the need to use large capacitor values. (Large capacitors are bulky and costly).
- Opamps are less expensive and inductors are absent in active filters. So, they are more economical than passive filters.
- Active filters are easier to tune and adjust.


## Disadvantages of active filters over passive filters:

$\checkmark$ Opamps need two power supplies
$\checkmark$ High frequency response of active filters is limited by the slew rate of the opamp.
$\checkmark$ High frequency opamps are costly.
$\checkmark$ There is a problem of oscillations in multi stage amplifiers.
$\checkmark$ Since active filters use active devices, they are more susceptible to RF interference.
$\checkmark$ In band pass filters and notch filters, practical considerations limit the value of Q factor to 50 .

## Types of Active Filters:

## 1. Low Pass Filters (LPFs):

They allow low frequency signals and attenuate high frequency signals > a cutoff frequency of $f_{h}$.

## 2. High Pass Filters (HPFs):

They allow high frequency signals and attenuate low frequency signals < a cutoff frequency of $f$.

## 3. Band Pass Filters (BPFs):

They allow a specified range of frequencies and reject frequencies outside this range.

## 4. Band Reject Filters (BRFs):

They attenuate a particular range of frequencies and allow frequency components outside this range.

## Frequency Response of Active Filters:



Fig. 1: Frequency Response of Active Filters
Fig. 1 represents the frequency response of the 4 types of active filters. Here frequency (in Hz ) is taken on X -axis and gain is taken on Y -axis. Log scale is used for X -axis and linear scale is used for Y -axis.

Based on the design of filters, analog active filters are classified as Butterworth filters, Chebyshev filters and Bessel (Cauer) filters. This classification depends on the Transfer function.

## Comparison of filters:

| Filter Type | Pass Band | Stop Band | Damping factor |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Butterworth | Flat | Flat | $\alpha=1.44$ |
| Chebyshev | Ripple | Flat | $\alpha=1.06$ |
| Bessel | Ripple | Ripple | $\alpha=1.73$ |

Since Butterworth filter has flat pass band and flat stop band, it is preferred much.

## First Order LPF



Fig. 2 (a): First Order LPF
Fig. 2(b) Frequency response
A First Order LPF has a single RC network connected to the non-inverting terminal of opamp as shown in Fig. 2(a). Here $v_{i}$ is the input voltage and $v_{o}$ is the output.

Here $R_{i}$ and $R_{f}$ determine the gain of the filter.
Let $v_{1}$ be the voltage at the (+) input terminal of opamp.
$\therefore v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})=v_{i}(\mathrm{~s}) \cdot \frac{\frac{1}{s c}}{R+\frac{1}{s c}}=v_{i}(\mathrm{~s}) \cdot \frac{1}{1+s R C}$
i.e., $\frac{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{1}{1+s R C}$
where $v(s)$ is the Laplace Transform of ' $v$ ' in time domain.
Closed loop gain of opamp $=\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$

## Overall Transfer Function is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s}) & =\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})} \cdot \frac{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})} \\
& \left.=\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}\right) \frac{1}{1+s R C} \quad \text { \{using eqs. (1) and (2) }\right\} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+s R C} \quad \text { Where } A_{o}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}} \quad \ldots \ldots .(3) \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

## Standard form of Transfer Function:

Let $\omega_{h}=\frac{1}{R C}$
Then from eq. (3), we can write
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{s})=\frac{A_{o}}{1+s R C}=\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{s}{\omega_{h}}}=\frac{A_{o} \omega_{h}}{s+\omega_{h}}$

## Frequency Response:

To determine the frequency response put $\mathrm{s}=\mathrm{j} \omega$ in eq. (3). Then we get
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega)=\frac{A_{o}}{1+j \omega R C}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+j 2 \pi f R C} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+j f /(1 / 2 \pi R C)} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+j f / f_{h}} \quad \cdots \tag{5}
\end{align*}
$$

Where $f_{h}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R C} \quad$ or $\quad \omega_{h}=\frac{1}{R C}$
Consider eq. (5).
When $\mathrm{f} \ll f_{h}$,

$$
|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{1+0}=A_{o}
$$

When $\mathrm{f}=f_{h}, \quad|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1^{2}+1^{2}}}=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{2}}$
When $\mathrm{f} \gg f_{h}, \quad|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{1+\infty}=0$
Fig. 2 (b) shows the frequency response of first order LPF.

## Important observations in Fig. 2(b):

i. Maximum gain is $A_{o}$ at $\mathrm{f}=0 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
ii. At $f_{h}$, gain falls by , $707 A_{o}$ (or -3 dB below $A_{o}$ when $A_{o}$ is expressed in dB ).
iii. Frequency response from 0 to $f_{h}$ is called pass band.
iv. When $\mathrm{f}>f_{h}$, gain decreases at a rate of $20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade.
v. Range of frequencies where $\mathrm{f}>f_{h}$ is called stop band

FIRST ORDER HPF


Fig. 3 (a): First Order HPF


Fig. 3 (b) Frequency response

A first order HPF has a single RC network connected to the non-inverting terminal of opamp as shown in Fig. 3 (a). Note that, by interchanging the positions of R and C of a first order LPF, we will get a first order HPF.

Let the minimum frequency allowed by this filter is $f_{l}$.
Here $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ determine the gain of the filter.
Let $v_{1}$ be the voltage at the $(+)$ input terminal of opamp.
$\therefore v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})=v_{i}(\mathrm{~s}) \cdot \frac{R}{R+\frac{1}{s C}}=v_{i}(\mathrm{~s}) \cdot \frac{s R C}{1+s R C}$
i.e., $\frac{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{s R C}{1+s R C}$
where $\mathrm{v}(\mathrm{s})$ is the Laplace Transform of ' v ' in time domain.
Closed loop gain of opamp $=\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
Overall Transfer Function is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s}) & =\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})}=\frac{v_{o}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})} \cdot \frac{v_{1}(\mathrm{~s})}{v_{i}(\mathrm{~s})} \\
& =\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}\right) \frac{s R C}{1+s R C} \quad \text { \{using eqs. (1) and (2)\} } \\
& =\frac{s A_{o} R C}{1+s R C} \quad \ldots \ldots . \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

Where $A_{o}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$

Let $\omega_{l}=\frac{1}{R C}$
Then from eq. (3), we can write
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{s})=\frac{s A_{o} R C}{1+s R C}=\frac{\frac{s A_{o}}{\omega_{l}}}{\frac{s}{\omega_{l}}+1}=\frac{A_{o} s}{s+\omega_{l}} \quad \ldots \ldots$.

## Frequency Response:

To determine the frequency response put $s=j \omega$ in eq. (3). Then we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega) & =\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{1}{s R C}} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{1}{j \omega R C}} \\
& \left.=\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{1}{j 2 \pi f R C}} \quad \quad \quad \text { (Since } \omega=2 \pi \mathrm{f}\right) \\
& \left.=\frac{A_{o}}{1-\frac{j}{2 \pi R C} \cdot \frac{1}{f}} \quad \quad \text { (Since } \frac{1}{j}=-\mathrm{j}\right) \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1-j \frac{f_{l}}{f}} \ldots \ldots(5) \tag{5}
\end{align*}
$$

Where $f_{l}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R C} \quad$ or $\quad \omega_{l}=\frac{1}{R C}$
Consider eq. (5).
When $\mathrm{f} \gg f_{l}, \quad|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{1-j .0}=0$
When $\mathrm{f}=f_{l}, \quad|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1^{2}+1^{2}}}=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{2}}$
When $\mathrm{f} \ll f_{l}, \quad|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{1-j . \infty}=0$
Fig. 3(b) shows the frequency response of first order LPF.

## Important observations in Fig. 3(b):

i. Maximum gain is $A_{o}$ at $\mathrm{f}=0 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
ii. At $f_{l}$, gain falls by, $707 A_{o}$ (or -3 dB below $A_{o}$ when $A_{o}$ is expressed in dB ).
iii. Frequency response from 0 to $f_{l}$ is called stop band.
iv. When $\mathrm{f}<f_{l}$, gain decreases at a rate of $20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade.
v. Range of frequencies $>f_{l}$ is called pass band

In $1^{\text {st }}$ order LPF and HPF, the gain rolls off at a rate of $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade. i.e., response is not close to ideal response. For $2^{\text {nd }}$ order LPF and HPF roll off rate is $-40 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade.
Let us consider a general $2^{\text {nd }}$ order filter (it is called Sallen-key filter) as shown in Fig. 4. Let us derive expression for $\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}$. Then we can substitute appropriate values for Y1, Y2, Y3, and Y4 to get the expression for $\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}$ for (a) $2^{\text {nd }} \operatorname{order} \operatorname{LPF}$ (b) $2^{\text {nd }}$ order HPF.


Fig. 4: Sallen-Key Filter
Let $v_{A}$ be the voltage at node A and $v_{B}$ ne the voltage at node B .
Since opamp is in non-inverting configuration, closed loop gain $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is given by
$\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{v_{o}}{v_{B}}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
i.e., $v_{B}=\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o}}$

Applying KCL at node A , we get
$\left(v_{A}-v_{i}\right) Y_{1}+\left(v_{A}-v_{B}\right) Y_{2}+\left(v_{A}-v_{o}\right) Y_{3}=0$
i.e., $v_{A}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-v_{i} Y_{1}-v_{B} Y_{2}-v_{o} Y_{3}=0$
i.e., $v_{i} Y_{1}=v_{A}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-v_{B} Y_{2}-v_{o} Y_{3}$

$$
\begin{align*}
& =v_{A}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o}} Y_{2}-v_{o} Y_{3} \quad \text { \{using eq. }  \tag{1}\\
& =v_{A}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o}}\left(Y_{2}+A_{o} Y_{3}\right) \quad \ldots \ldots \ldots \tag{3}
\end{align*}
$$

Applying KCL at node B , we get
$\left(v_{B}-v_{A}\right) Y_{2}+\left(v_{B}-0\right) Y_{4}=0$
i.e., $-v_{B} Y_{2}+v_{B}\left(Y_{2}+Y_{4}\right)=0$
i.e., $v_{A}=\frac{v_{B}\left(Y_{2}+Y_{4}\right)}{Y_{2}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{v_{0}}{A_{o}} \frac{Y_{2}+Y_{4}}{Y_{2}} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

\{using eq. (2) \}
Putting $v_{A}$ value from eq. (4) into eq. (3), we get

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{i} Y_{1} & =\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o}}\left(\frac{Y_{2}+Y_{4}}{Y_{2}}\right)\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o}}\left(Y_{2}+A_{o} Y_{3}\right) \\
& =\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o} Y_{2}}\left\{\left(Y_{2}+Y_{4}\right)\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)-y_{2}^{2}-A_{o} Y_{2} Y_{3}\right\} \\
& =\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o} Y_{2}}\left\{Y_{1} Y_{2}+y_{z}^{z}+Y_{2} Y_{3}+Y_{2} Y_{3}+Y_{2} Y_{3}+Y_{2} Y_{3}-y_{z}^{z}-A_{o} Y_{2} Y_{3}\right\} \\
& =\frac{v_{o}}{A_{o} Y_{2}}\left\{Y_{1} Y_{2}+Y_{4}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)+Y_{2} Y_{3}\left(1-A_{o}\right)\right\} \\
\therefore \frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}} & =\frac{A_{o} Y_{1} Y_{2}}{Y_{1} Y_{2}+Y_{4}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)+Y_{2} Y_{3}\left(1-A_{o}\right)} \ldots \ldots \text { (5) } \tag{5}
\end{align*}
$$

## (a) Second order LPF:

To get second order LPF, choose $\mathrm{Y}_{1}=\mathrm{Y}_{2}=\frac{1}{R}$ and $\mathrm{Y}_{3}=\mathrm{Y}_{4}=$ SC. Then Fig. 4 becomes Fig. 5.


Fig. 5: Second order LPF
Substituting $\mathrm{Y}_{1}=\mathrm{Y}_{2}=\frac{1}{R}$ and $\mathrm{Y}_{3}=\mathrm{Y}_{4}=$ SC in eq. (5), we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s}) & =\frac{A_{0} * \frac{1}{R^{*}} * \frac{1}{R}}{\frac{1}{R^{*}} * \frac{1}{R}+s C\left(\frac{1}{R}+\frac{1}{R}+s C\right)+\frac{1}{R} \cdot s C\left(1-A_{0}\right)} \\
& =\frac{A_{o} / R^{2}}{\frac{1}{R^{2}}+\frac{s C}{R}(2+s R C)+\frac{s C}{R}\left(1-A_{0}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\frac{A_{o}}{R^{2}}}{\frac{1+s R C(2+s C)+s R C\left(1-A_{o}\right)}{R^{2}}} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{s^{2} R^{2} C 2+s R C\left(3-A_{o}\right)+1} \ldots \ldots \ldots  \tag{6}\\
\mathrm{~s}=0 & \Rightarrow \mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s})=\mathrm{A}_{o} \\
\mathrm{~s}=\infty & \Rightarrow \mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s})=0
\end{align*}
$$

So,it is an LPF of $2^{\text {nd }}$ order.
For any second order systems such as electrical, mechanical, hydraulic andchemical system, the Transfer function (TF) is given by
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{s})=\frac{A_{o} \omega_{h}{ }^{2}}{s^{2}+\alpha \omega_{h} s+\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}$

Where $\alpha=$ damping factor or damping coefficient
$\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Gain of the system
$\omega_{h}=2 \pi \mathrm{f}_{h}$, where $\mathrm{f}_{h}=$ Highest cutoff frequency.
Eq. (6) can be written as

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s}) & =\frac{A_{O} / R^{2} C^{2}}{s^{2}+\frac{s R C}{R^{2} C^{2}}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+\frac{1}{R^{2} C^{2}}} \\
& =\frac{A_{O} / R^{2} C^{2}}{s^{2}+\frac{s}{R C}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+\frac{1}{R^{2} C^{2}}} \tag{8}
\end{align*}
$$

Comparing eqs. (7) and (8), we get
$\omega_{h}=\frac{1}{R C}$ and $\alpha=3-\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}$
Where $\alpha=1.414=\sqrt{2}$ for Butterworth filter, 1.06 for Chebyshev filter and 1.73 for Bessel filter.

## Normalized expression for Transfer function:

Putting $\mathrm{s}=\mathrm{j} \omega$ in eq. (7), we get
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega)=\frac{A_{0} \omega_{h}{ }^{2}}{(j \omega)^{2}+\alpha \omega_{h} s(j \omega)+\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}$ Dividing the numerator and denominator of above equation by $\omega_{h}{ }^{2}$, we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega) & =\frac{A_{o}}{\left(j \omega / \omega_{h}\right)^{2}+j \alpha \omega \omega_{h} / \omega_{h}^{2}+1} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{\left(j \omega / \omega_{h}\right)^{2}+j \alpha \omega / \omega_{h}+1} \cdots .  \tag{9}\\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{s_{n}^{2}+j \alpha s_{n}+1}
\end{align*}
$$

Where $\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{n}}=$ normalized frequency $=\mathrm{j}\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_{h}}\right)$

## Expression for magnitude of TF in dB:

Eq. (9) can be written as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega) & =\frac{A_{o}}{-\left(\omega / \omega_{h}\right)^{2}+j \alpha \omega / \omega_{h}+1} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{\left(1-\frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}\right)+j \alpha \frac{\omega}{\omega_{h}}}
\end{aligned}
$$

$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=20 \log \frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{\left(1-\frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}\right)^{2}+\alpha^{2} \frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}}}$

$$
=20 \log \frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\omega^{4}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{4}}-2 \frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}+\alpha^{2} \frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}}}
$$

Since $\alpha^{2}=2$, last 2 terms in the root get cancelled. So, we get
$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\omega^{4}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{4}}}}=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$

$$
=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}} \quad\left(\text { since } \omega=2 \pi \mathrm{f} \text { and } \omega_{h}=2 \pi f_{h}\right.
$$

Generalized expression for magnitude of TF for LPF is
$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2 n}}}$
Where ' $n$ ' is the order of the filter.

## (b) Second order HPF:

Consider the expression for $\frac{v_{0}}{v_{i}}$ derived using general second order filter.
$\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}=\frac{A_{o} Y_{1} Y_{2}}{Y_{1} Y_{2}+Y_{4}\left(Y_{1}+Y_{2}+Y_{3}\right)+Y_{2} Y_{3}\left(1-A_{o}\right)}$
To get second order LPF, choose $Y_{1}=Y_{2}=s C$ and $Y_{3}=Y_{4}=\frac{1}{R}$. Then Fig. 4 becomes Fig. 6.


Fig. 6: Second order HPF
Substituting $\mathrm{Y}_{1}=\mathrm{Y}_{2}=\frac{1}{R}$ and $\mathrm{Y}_{3}=\mathrm{Y}_{4}=\mathrm{SC}$ in eq. (5), we get

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{~s}) & =\frac{A_{0} * s C * s C}{s C * s C+\frac{1}{R}\left(s C+s C+\frac{1}{R}\right)+\frac{s C}{R}\left(1-A_{0}\right)} \\
& =\frac{A_{o} s^{2} C^{2}}{s^{2} C^{2}+\frac{S C}{R}\left(2+\frac{1}{S R}\right)+\frac{s C}{R}\left(1-A_{0}\right)} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{1}{s R C}\left(2+\frac{1}{s R C}\right)+\frac{1}{s R C}\left(1-A_{o}\right)} \\
& =\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{1}{s R C}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+\frac{1}{s^{2} R^{2} C^{2}}} \cdots \cdots \cdots \tag{6}
\end{align*}
$$

For any second order system such as electrical, mechanical, hydraulic andchemical system, the Transfer function (TF) is given by
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{s})=\frac{A_{o} s^{2}}{s^{2}+\alpha \omega_{l} s+\omega_{l}{ }^{2}} \ldots .$.
Where $\alpha=$ damping factor or damping coefficient
$\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Gain of the system
$\omega_{l}=2 \pi \mathrm{f}_{l}$, where $\mathrm{f}_{l}=$ Lowest cutoff frequency.
Eq. (6) can be written as
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{s})=\frac{A_{0} / R^{2} C^{2}}{s^{2}+\frac{s R C}{R^{2} C^{2}}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+\frac{1}{R^{2} C^{2}}}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{A_{o}}{1+\frac{\omega_{l}}{s}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+\frac{\omega l}{l}^{2}} \tag{8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparing eqs. (7) and (8), we get
$\omega_{l}=\frac{1}{R C}$ and $\alpha=3-\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}$
Where $\alpha=1.414=\sqrt{2}$ for Butterworth filter, 1.06 for Chebyshev filter and 1.73 for Bessel filter.

## Normalized expression for Transfer function:

Putting $\mathrm{s}=\mathrm{j} \omega$ in eq. (8), we get
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega)=\frac{A_{o}}{\left(\frac{\omega_{l}}{j \omega}\right)^{2}+\frac{\omega_{l}}{j \omega}\left(3-A_{o}\right)+1}$ Dividing the numerator and denominator of above

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{A_{o}}{1-\frac{j \omega l}{\omega}\left(3-A_{o}\right)-\frac{\omega l^{2}}{\omega^{2}}} . \tag{9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Normalized expression for Transfer function is

$$
=\frac{A_{o}}{s_{n}^{2}+j \alpha s_{n}+1}
$$

Where $\mathrm{s}_{\mathrm{n}}=$ normalized frequency $=-\frac{j \omega_{l}}{\omega}$ and $\alpha=3-A_{o}$

## Expression for magnitude of TF in dB:

Eq. (9) can be written as
$\mathrm{H}(\mathrm{j} \omega)=\frac{A_{o}}{1-\frac{\omega l^{2}}{\omega^{2}}-\frac{j \omega l}{\omega}\left(3-A_{o}\right)}$
$|H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{\left(1-\frac{\omega l^{2}}{\omega^{2}}\right)^{2}+\alpha^{2} \frac{\omega_{l}}{\omega^{2}}}}$
$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=20 \log$

$$
\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{\left(1-\frac{\omega_{l}^{2}}{\omega^{2}}\right)^{2}+\alpha^{2} \frac{\omega_{l}^{2}}{\omega^{2}}}}
$$

$$
=20 \log \frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\omega_{l}^{4}}{\omega^{4}}-2 \frac{\omega_{l}^{2}}{\omega^{2}}+\alpha^{2} \frac{\omega^{2}}{\omega_{h}{ }^{2}}}}
$$

Since $\alpha^{2}=2$, last 2 terms in the root get cancelled. So, we get
$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\omega_{L^{4}} \omega^{4}}{}}}=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{\omega}{\omega}\right)^{4}}}$

$$
=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}} \quad \text { (since } \omega=2 \pi \text { f and } \omega_{l}=2 \pi f_{l}
$$

Generalized expression for magnitude of TF for LPF is
$20 \log |H(j \omega)|=\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f}\right)^{2 n}}}$
Where ' $n$ ' is the order of the filter.

## Design of LPF and HPF:

## (a) Design of second order LPF:

Select equal values of R and C in the two RC sections. Then follow the steps given below.
Step1: Choose value of $f_{h} .\left(e . g .: f_{h}=1000 \mathrm{~Hz}\right)$
Step2: Select C Value $\leq 0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ (Say C $=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ )
Step3: Calculate R value using the relation

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \mathrm{RC}}
$$

Step4: Select $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$ using the relation

$$
\mathrm{A}_{0}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}=3-\alpha
$$

Where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Pass band gain

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{A} & =\text { Damping factor } \\
& =1.414 \text { for Butterworth filter } \\
& =1.06 \text { for Chebyshev filter } \\
& =1.73 \text { for Bessel filter }
\end{aligned}
$$

## (b) Design of second order HPF:

Follow the same procedure given above, where cutoff frequency ' $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}$ ' is replaced by $\mathrm{f}_{1}$, where $\mathrm{f}_{1}$ is the lower cutoff frequency of HPF.

Note: Use mylar or tantalum capacitors.

## Design of first order LPF and HPF:

Procedure is same as that of second order LPF and HPF. But here there is a single RC section.

Problem1: Design a $2^{\text {nd }}$ order Butterworth LPF having upper cutoff frequency of 1 KHz .
Solution:
Given $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \mathrm{RC}}=1 \mathrm{KHz}=1000 \mathrm{~Hz}$
i.e., $R=\frac{1}{2 \pi f C}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 1000 \times C}$

Choose C $=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}=10^{-7} \mathrm{~F} \quad \frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
$\therefore \mathrm{R}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 1000 \times 10^{-7}}$
We know that $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=3-\alpha$
For Butter worth filter $\alpha=\sqrt{2}=1.414$
$\therefore \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=3-1.414=1.586$
But $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
i.e., $1.586=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
or $\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}=1.586-1=0.586$
Let $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=5.86 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Then $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{i}}=\frac{5.86 \mathrm{~K} \Omega}{0.586}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Problem2: Design a $2^{\text {nd }}$ order Butterworth LPF having lower cutoff frequency of 1 KHz .
Solution is same as in Problem1. Answers are also same.
But frequency response formulae are different for LPF and HPF.

## Band Pass Filter (BPF)

A BPF allows a particular band of frequencies and rejects frequencies outside that band.
Wide Band Pass Filter:
Let $f_{l}=$ Lower cutoff frequency
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=$ Higher cutoff frequency
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Center frequency
Q = Quality Factor
Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& f_{o}=\sqrt{f_{l} f_{h}} \\
& \text { Bandwidth }=f_{h}-f_{l} \\
& \mathrm{Q}=\frac{f_{o}}{f_{h}-f_{l}}
\end{aligned}
$$

There are two types of BPFs. They are wide BPF and narrow BPF. For wide BPF, $\mathrm{Q}<10$ and for narrow BPF, Q > 10.

## Wide Band Pass Filter ( $\mathbf{O}<10$ )



Fig. 7: First order wide BPF
Fig. 7 represents a first order wide BPF. It is obtained by cascading a first order HPF and a first order LPF as shown.

Let $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o} 1}=$ Pass band gain of HPF
Let $\mathrm{A}_{02}=$ Pass band gain of LPF
Then
Magnitude of Transfer Function (TF) of HPF is given by
$\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{HP}}\right|=\frac{A_{01}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$ where $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{l}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{2} C_{2}}$
Magnitude of Transfer Function (TF) of HPF is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{LP}}\right|=\frac{A_{o 2}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}} \text { where } \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}} \tag{2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Magnitude of TF of BPF =

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{BP}}\right|=\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{HP}}\right| *\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{LP}}\right| \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Eqs. (1), (2) and (3), we write
$\left|\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{BP}}\right|=\frac{A_{01}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}} \frac{A_{o 2}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}=\frac{A_{0}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2} 1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$ where $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o}}=\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o} 1} . \mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o} 2}$

Problem 3: Design a wide band pass filter having $f_{l}=400 \mathrm{~Hz}$ and $f_{h}=2 \mathrm{KHz}$ with a pass band gain of 2 .

## Solution:

## For LPF:

$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=2 \mathrm{KHz}=2000 \mathrm{~Hz}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}}$
Choose $\mathrm{C}_{1}=0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.01 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}$
Then $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 2000 \times 0.01 \times 10-6}=7.9 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$

## For LPF:

$\mathrm{f}_{1}=400 \mathrm{~Hz}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{2} C_{2}}$
Choose $\mathrm{C}_{2}=0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.01 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}$
Then $R_{2}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 400 \times 0.01 \times 10-6}=39.8 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Here, the pass band gains of LPF and HPF should be same.
Let $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{ol}}=\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{0} 2}=2=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
i.e., $R_{f}=R_{i}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ (say)
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\sqrt{f_{h} f_{l}}=\sqrt{2000 \times 400}=894.4 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
$\mathrm{Q}=\frac{f_{o}}{B W}=\frac{f_{o}}{f_{h-}-f_{l}}=\frac{894.4}{2000-400}=0.56$
Note that $\mathrm{Q}<10$

## Narrow Band Pass Filter:



Fig. 8: Second Order narrow Band Pass Filter
Fig. 8 shows a narrow BPF. Here $\mathrm{Q}>10$.

## BAND REJECT FILTER (BRF):

A BRF is also called a band stop filter or band elimination filter. It rejects a particular band of frequencies and rejects frequencies outside this band. There are two types of BRF. They are wide BRF and narrow BRF.

## Wide Band Reject Filter:

It has a $\mathrm{Q}<10$. It can be made using an LPF, HPF and a summer. Its necessary constraints are (i) The lower cutoff frequency $f_{l}$ of the HPF >> the higher cutoff frequency $f_{h}$ of LPF. (ii) The pass band gains of LPF and HPF should be same.


Fig. 9 (a): Wide BRF


Fig. 9 (b): Frequency response of wide BRF
Fig. 9 (a) shows the circuit diagram of a wide BRF. Fig. 9 (b) shows its frequency response.

Problem 4: Design a wide band reject filter having $f_{h}=400 \mathrm{~Hz}$ and $f_{l}=2 \mathrm{KHz}$ with a pass band gain of 2 .

## Solution:

## For HPF:

$\mathrm{f}_{1}=2 \mathrm{KHz}=2000 \mathrm{~Hz}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{2} C_{2}}$
Choose $\mathrm{C}_{2}=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.1 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}$
Then $\mathrm{R}_{2}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 2000 \times 0.1 \times 10-6}=795 \Omega \approx 800 \Omega$

## For LPF:

$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=400 \mathrm{~Hz}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R_{1} C_{1}}$
Choose $\mathrm{C}_{1}=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.1 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}$
Then $\mathrm{R}_{1}=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 400 \times 0.1 \times 10-6}=3978 \Omega \approx 4 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$
Here, the pass band gains of LPF and HPF should be same.
Let $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o} 1}=\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{o} 2}=2=1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{i}}$
i.e., $R_{f}=R_{i}=10 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ (say)

## Narrow Band Reject Filter:

Narrow BRF is commonly called a notch filter. It is useful for the rejection of a single frequency like 50 Hz power line hum.

There are mainly two ways of realizing notch filter
First way of realizing a second order notch filter:
It is achieved by cascading a second order narrow BPF and a summer. It is shown in Fig. 10 (a)


Fig. 10 (a)
Second way of realizing a second order notch filter (Twin-T filter):


Fig. 10 (b) Twin-T notch filter


Fig. 10 (c) Frequency response of notch filter
Fig. 10 (b) shows a Twin-T notch filter.
If $\mathrm{f}_{1}=$ Lower cutoff frequency
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{h}}=$ Higher cutoff frequency
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Center frequency
Q = Quality Factor
From the analysis of the circuit, we can show that
$f_{o}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R C}$
Bandwidth $=B W=f_{h}-f_{1}=4 f_{o}(1-K)$
$\mathrm{Q}=\frac{f_{o}}{B W}=\frac{1}{4-K}$
As K approaches unity, Q factor becomes very large and bandwidth approaches 0 .
Mismatches between resistors and capacitors also limit the value of Q and bandwidth.
$\mathrm{R}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ are used to adjust gain of the filter.
Fig. 10 (c) shows the frequency response of notch filter.

Problem 5: Design a 50 Hz active notch filter.

## Solution:

Consider the Twin-T filter in Fig. 10 (b)
Given that $f_{o}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R C}=50 \mathrm{~Hz}$
Let $\mathrm{C}=0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}=0.1 \times 10^{-6} \mathrm{~F}$
Then $\mathrm{R}=\frac{1}{2 \pi f_{o} C}$

$$
=\frac{1}{2 \pi \times 50 \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}}=31.8 \mathrm{~K} \Omega
$$

For $\mathrm{R} / 2$, we can use two $31.8 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ in parallel.
For 2C, we can use two capacitors in parallel.

## ALL PASS FILTERS (APFs)

All pass filters (APFs) allow all frequency components of input signal without any attenuation. Their main advantage is they provide desired phase shift at any frequency. Thus, APFs are used in phase correction in analog systems (e.g.: Analog telephone systems).

APFs are also called delay equalizers or phase correctors.


Fig. 11 (a) All Pass Filter


Fig. 11 (b) Waveforms of All Pass Filter
Fig. 11 (a) shows an All Pass Filter where $v_{i}$ is input voltage and $v_{o}$ is output voltage and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}$
$=R_{1}$. Fig. 11 (b) shows waveforms for All Pass Filter.
Let the voltage at node ' $a$ ' is $v_{a}$.
By using super position theorem, we can write
$v_{o}=-\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}} \cdot v_{i}+\left(1+\frac{R_{f}}{R_{1}}\right) v_{a}$
Since $R_{f}=R_{1}$. above equation becomes
$v_{o}=-v_{i}+2 v_{a}$
But $v_{a}=v_{i} \cdot \frac{\frac{1}{s C}}{R+\frac{1}{s C}}=v_{i} \cdot \frac{1}{1+s R C} \ldots$.
Eqs. (1) and (2) $\Rightarrow$

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{o} & =-v_{i}+2 v_{i} \cdot \frac{1}{1+s R C} \\
& =v_{i}\left(-1+\frac{2}{1+s R C}\right) \\
& =v_{i} \frac{(-1-s R C+2)}{1+s R C} \\
& =v_{i} \frac{1-s R C}{1+s R C} \\
& =v_{i} \frac{1-j \omega R C}{1+j \omega R C}
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e., $\quad \frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}=\frac{1-j \omega R C}{1+j \omega R C}$

$$
=\frac{1-j 2 \pi f R C}{1+j 2 \pi f R C}
$$

$\therefore \quad$ Magnitude of $\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}$ is given by
$\left|\frac{v_{o}}{v_{i}}\right|=\frac{\sqrt{1+(2 \pi f R C)^{2}}}{\sqrt{1+(2 \pi f R C)^{2}}}=1$
i.e., $\left|v_{o}\right|=\left|v_{i}\right|$ for all frequencies.

The phase shift $\Phi$ between $v_{o}$ and $v_{i}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Phi & =-\tan ^{-1}(2 \pi f R C)-\tan ^{-1}(2 \pi f R C) \\
& =-2 \tan ^{-1}(2 \pi f R C)
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, the phase shift can be varied with frequency for a given R and C .
We can obtain phase shift from 0 to 1800 as we change the frequency from 0 to $\infty$.
As phase shit here is negative, the output $v_{o}$ lags input $v_{i}$.
The phase shift can be made positive by interchanging R and C in Fig. 11 (a)

## 555 TIMER (Introduction)

- A 555 timer is a monolithic IC that can produce accurate and highly stable time delays or oscillations.
- It operates with supply range of +5 V and produces a delay ranging from' $\mu$ secs’ to hours.
- It is compatible with TTL and CMOS logic circuits.
- It is available as an 8 -pin metal can, an 8 -pin mini-DIP or 14-pin DIP.


## Applications of 555 timer:

1. Monostable multivibrator
2. Astable multivibrator
3. Waveform (Pulse, ramp and square waves) generator
4. Burglar and toxic alarms
5. Voltage regulators
6. Traffic control
7. Digital logic probes
8. Temperature measurement and control
9. Infrared transmitters.

## PIN Diagram of 555 timer:

Fig. 1 (a) represents the pin diagram of a 555 timer.
Here R and C are external resistor and capacitor. Let us assume that the width of trigger pulse is very small.


Fig. 1 (a): Pin diagram of 555 Timer

## Functional diagram of a 555 timer:


.Fig. 1 (b): Functional diagram

Fig. 1 (b) shows its functional diagram.Three $5 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ resistors form voltage divider. They provide a bias of $\frac{2}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\text {CC }}$ to the upper comparator (UC) and $\frac{1}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$ to the lower comparator (LC). In some applications, we apply modulation voltage at pin 5 to vary the time. In other applications, a capacitor $(0.01 \mu \mathrm{~F})$ is connected between pin 5 and ground to by-pass noise or ripple from the supply. Q and Q' are outputs of control Flip-Flop(FF). Outputs of UC and LC are R and S inputs of FF respectively. Power amplifier is basically an inverter. Its output at pin 3 is output of timer. Since $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}$ is the input of inverter, output at pin 3 is Q .

In standby mode, $\mathrm{Q}=0, \mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1$. So, $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ at $\mathrm{pin} 3=\mathrm{Q}=0$. A negative going triggering pulse is applied at pin 2. Its dc level is > the threshold level of $\mathbf{L C}$ (i.e., $\frac{1}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$ ). When trigger pulse passes through $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$, output of $\mathbf{L C}$ goes high and sets the $\mathbf{F F}$. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=1$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=0$. During + ve excursion, when voltage at pin 6 passes through $\frac{2}{3} V_{C C}, \mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of $\mathbf{U C}$ goes high and resets the FF. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=0$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1$.

Reset input at pin 4 is used to reset the FF, irrespective of o/p of LC. This input is $<0.4 \mathrm{~V}$. When the reset input is not used, it is connected to $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$.

Transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ acts as a buffer and isolates reset $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ from FF and transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{1} . \mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ is applied from supply $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$. It drives $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$.

## MONOSTABLE OPERATION USING 555 TIMER



Fig. 2 (a):Pin Connections for Monostable multivibrator
Fig. 2 (a) shows the timer with required connections for monostable operation and Fig. 2 (b) shows the functional diagram. Fig. 3 shows different waveforms of the circuit.


Fig. 2 (b) Functional Diagram for Monostable multivibrator


Fig. 3: Waveforms of Monostable multivibrator
In standby mode, FF is reset. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=0$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1$. Here $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}$ is the input to transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$. Since $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1, \mathrm{Q}_{1}$ is ON (i.e., $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CE}}=0$ ). So, capacitor is shorted to ground. Output at pin $3=\mathrm{Q}$ $=0$.

Fig. 3(a) shows the triggering pulse.
As trigger pulse passes through $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$, FF is set. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=1$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=0$.

Since $Q^{\prime}=0, Q_{1}$ is OFF. So, capacitor is not short circuited (i.e., capacitor is unclamped). Output at pin $3=\mathrm{Q}=1$.

The timing cycle begins now.
Now C charges exponentially through R towards $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$, with a time constant RC as shown in Fig. 3 (b).
After a time T (say), capacitor voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is just $>\frac{2}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$. So, UC resets the FF. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=0$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1$.

Since $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=0, \mathrm{Q}_{1}$ is ON . Then C discharges rapidly to ground potential.
The o/p returns to standby state or ground potential as shown in Fig. 3 (c)
If a second trigger pulse is given as shown in the right side of fig. 3(a), before T, it has no effect on the operation of the circuit.

## Derivation for Output Pulse Width ' $T$ ':

We know that capacitor charge equation is given by
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=v_{f}+\left(v_{i}-v_{f}\right) e^{-t / R C}$
where $v_{i}=$ Initial voltage $=0$
$v_{f}=$ Final (target) voltage $=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{c}(\mathrm{t}) & =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}+\left(0-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\right) e^{-t / R C} \\
& =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-t / R C}\right) \ldots \ldots \tag{2}
\end{align*}
$$

At $t=T, v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{2}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes
$\frac{2}{3} \forall_{\mathrm{CC}}=\forall_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-T / R C}\right)$
i.e., $e^{-T / R C}=1-\frac{2}{3}=\frac{1}{3}$
or $e^{T / R C}=\ln (3)$
i.e., $\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{RC} \ln (3)$
i.e., $\quad$ T = 1.1 RC seconds

Applications of Monostable Multivibrator:

1. Frequency Divider
2. Pulse Stretcher
3. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM)
4. Linear Ramp Generator

Problem 1: Design a monostable multivibrator using 555 Timer, shown in Fig. 2 (b) with a pulse width of 100 m Sec .

## Solution:

Given $\mathrm{T}=1.1 \mathrm{RC}=100 \times 10^{-3} \mathrm{Sec}$
Choose $\mathrm{R}=100 \mathrm{~K} \Omega=10^{5} \Omega$
Then $100 \times 10^{-3}=1.1 \times 10^{5} \times \mathrm{C}$
$\therefore \mathrm{C}=\frac{100 \times 10^{-3}}{1.1 \times 10^{5}}=0.909 \mu \mathrm{~F}=1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$

## ASTABLE OPERATION USING 555 TIMER



Fig. 4 (a): Pin Connections for Astable operation


Fig. 4 (b): Functional Diagram for Astable Operation


Fig. 5 (a) and (b): Waveforms of Astable Multivibrator
Fig. 4 (a) represents the pin connection diagram for 555 timer in astable mode. $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}$ are external resistors and C is external capacitor. Fig. 4 (b) shows the functional diagram.
Compared to monostable operation, timing resistor $R$ is split into two sections $R_{A}$ and $R_{B}$. Pin 7 (collector of $Q_{1}$ ) is connected to the junction of $A$ and $B$. When $V_{C C}$ is connected, external capacitor $C$ charges towards $V_{C C}$ through $R_{A}$ and $R_{B}$, with a time constant of $\left(R_{A}+\right.$ $R_{B}$ ) C. During this time output at pin $3=$ High (i.e., $Q=1$ and $Q^{\prime}=0$ ). Since $Q^{\prime}=0, C$ is unclamped.
When $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is just $>\frac{2}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$, Upper comparator (UC) resets $F F$. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=0$ and $\mathrm{Q}^{\prime}=1$. So $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ is $\mathbf{O N}\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CE}}=0\right)$ and C discharges through $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}$ with a time constant $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}} C$.

For better operation $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}$ are taken large to limit current.
During discharging, when $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is just $<\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$, lower comparator (LC) sets the FF. i.e., $\mathrm{Q}=1$ and $Q^{\prime}=0 . S o Q_{1}$ is $\operatorname{OFF}\left(V_{C E}=V_{C C}\right)$ and $C$ is unclamped. Thus, $C$ is charged and discharged periodically between $\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}$ and $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$ respectively.

Fig. 5 (a) and Fig. 5 (b) shows the waveforms of output and voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ across capacitor respectively.

## Derivation for Time Period ' $T$ ' of Output:

We know that capacitor charge equation is given by
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=v_{f}+\left(v_{i}-v_{f}\right) e^{-t / R C}$
where $v_{i}=$ Initial voltage
$v_{f}=$ Final (target) voltage
Let $\mathbf{t}_{\mathbf{H}}=$ Time taken for C to charge from $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$ to $\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}=\mathrm{t}_{1}-\mathrm{t}_{2}$
Where $\mathrm{t}_{1}=$ Time taken to charge from 0 to $\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}$
and $\mathrm{t}_{2}=$ Time taken to charge from 0 to $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$
Let $\mathbf{t}_{\mathbf{L}}=$ Time taken for C to discharge from $\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}$ to $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$
For $\mathbf{t}_{1}, v_{i}=0$ and $v_{f}=V_{C C}$.
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
v_{c}(\mathrm{t}) & =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}+\left(0-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\right) e^{-t / R C} \\
& =\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-t / R C}\right) \ldots \ldots
\end{aligned}
$$

At $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{1}, v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{2}{3} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (2) becomes
$\frac{2}{3} \forall_{\mathrm{CC}}=\forall_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-t_{1} / R C}\right)$
i.e., $e^{-t_{1} / R C}=1-\frac{2}{3}=\frac{1}{3}$
or $e^{t_{1} / R C}=\ln (3)$
i.e., $\mathrm{t}_{1}=\mathrm{RC} \ln (3)$
i.e., $\quad t_{1}=1.1 \mathrm{RC}$

For $\mathbf{t}_{2} \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}=0$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$.
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes
$v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}+\left(0-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\right) e^{-t / R C}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-t / R C}\right) \ldots \ldots \tag{3}
\end{equation*}
$$

At $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{2}, v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (3) becomes
$\forall_{\mathrm{CC}} / 3=\forall_{\mathrm{CC}}\left(1-e^{-t_{2} / R C}\right)$
i.e., $e^{-t_{2} / R C}=1-\frac{1}{3}=\frac{2}{3}$
i.e., $e^{t_{2} / R C}=\frac{3}{2}$

Taking logarithms on both sides, we get
i.e., $\mathrm{t}_{2}=\mathrm{RC} \ln \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$
i.e., $\quad t_{2}=0.405 \mathrm{RC}$
$\therefore \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{H}}=\mathrm{t}_{1}-\mathrm{t}_{2}=1.1 \mathrm{RC}-0.405 \mathrm{RC}$
$=0.69 \mathrm{RC}\left(\right.$ where $\left.\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}\right)$
Thus $\mathbf{t}_{\mathbf{H}}=0.69\left(\mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{B}}\right)$
For $\mathbf{t}_{\underline{\mathbf{L}}}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{i}}=\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{f}}=0$
$\therefore$ Eq. (1) becomes

$$
\begin{align*}
v_{c}(\mathrm{t}) & =0+\left(\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}-0\right) e^{-t / R C} \\
& =\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3} e^{-t / R C} \ldots \ldots(5) \tag{5}
\end{align*}
$$

At $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}, v_{c}(\mathrm{t})=\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (5) becomes
$\forall_{\mathrm{CC}} / \boldsymbol{\beta}=\left(2 \forall_{\mathrm{CC}} / \boldsymbol{3}\right) e^{-t_{L} / R C}$
i.e., $e^{-t_{L} / R C}=\frac{1}{2}$
i.e., $e^{t_{L} / R C}=2$

Taking logarithms on both sides, we get
$t_{L} / R C=\ln (2)$
i.e., $t_{L}=R C \ln (2)=0.69 R C$

Here $R=R_{B}$
$\therefore \mathbf{t}_{\mathrm{L}}=\mathbf{0 . 6 9} \mathbf{R}_{\mathrm{B}} \mathbf{C} \ldots$ (6)
$\therefore \mathrm{T}=\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{H}}+\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}}$
i.e., $\mathbf{T}=\mathbf{0 . 6 9}\left(\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{A}}+\mathbf{2} \mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{B}}\right) \mathbf{C}\{$ from eqs. (4) and (6) $\}$

Frequency $=\frac{1}{T}=\frac{1}{0.69\left(R_{A}+2 R_{B}\right) \mathrm{C}}=\frac{1.45}{(\operatorname{RA}+2 \mathrm{RB}) \mathrm{C}}$
$\%$ Duty cycle $=\frac{t_{L}}{t_{L}+t_{H}} \times 100 \%$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =\frac{0.69 R_{B} \epsilon}{0.69\left(R_{A}+2 R_{B}\right) \epsilon} \\
& =\frac{\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{B}}}{\left(\boldsymbol{R}_{\boldsymbol{A}}+\mathbf{2 R _ { B }}\right)} \times \mathbf{1 0 0 \%}
\end{aligned}
$$

Problem 2:For the astable multivibrator in Fig. 4 (b), $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}=6.8 \mathrm{~K} \Omega, \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}=3.3 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ and $\mathrm{C}=0.1$ $\mu \mathrm{F}$. Calculate $\mathrm{t}_{\text {HIGH }}, \mathrm{t}_{\text {Low }}$, free running frequency and duty cycle.

## Solution:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{HIGH}}= 0.69\left(\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{A}}+2 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}}\right) \\
&=0.69\left(6.8 \times 10^{3}+2 \times 3.3 \times 10^{3}\right) \times 0.110^{-6} \\
&= 0.7 \mathrm{mSec} \\
& \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{LOW}}= \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{L}} \\
&= 0.69 \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{B}} \mathrm{C} \\
&=0.69 \times 3.3 \times 10^{3} \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6} \\
&=0.23 \mathrm{mSec} \\
& \mathrm{f}=\frac{1.45}{\left(R_{A}+2 R_{B}\right) \mathrm{C}}=\frac{1.45}{\left(6.8 \times 10^{3}+2 \times 3.3 \times 10^{3}\right) \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}} \\
&= 1.07 \mathrm{KHz}
\end{aligned}
$$

Duty cycle $=\frac{R_{B}}{\left(R_{A}+2 R_{B}\right)}$

$$
=\frac{3 \times 10^{3}}{6.8 \times 10^{3}+2 \times 3.3 \times 10^{3}}=0.25
$$

\% Duty cycle = 25\%

## Applications of Astable Multivibrator:

1. FSK Generator
2. Pulse Position Modulator (PPM)
3. Schmitt Trigger

## 555 timer as Schmitt Trigger:



Fig. 6: 555 timer in Schmitt trigger operation


Fig. 7:Inputand OutputWaveforms
Fig. 6shows the pin connections of 555 timer used as a Schmitt trigger. Here the two comparators are tied together and externally biased at $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}} / 2$ through $\mathrm{R}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{R}_{2}$ as shown. We know that Upper comparator trips at $\frac{2 V_{C C}}{3}$ and lower comparator trips at $\frac{V_{C C}}{3}$. The bias provided by $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$ is cantered between these two limits. Now a sine wave is applied. If its amplitude exceeds $\left(\frac{2 V_{c c}}{3}-\frac{V_{c c}}{3}\right)$ reference levels, the internal FF sets and resets alternately and provides a square wave as shown in Fig. 7(a) andFig. 7 (b) show the i/p signal. Here frequency of square wave is same as that of input signal.

## PHASE LOCKED LOOPS (PLLs)

Phase Locked Loop (PLL) is an important block of linear systems. PLLs were first used in 1930s in communication applications. Previously, they were costly because they were realized in discrete form. Now PLLs are available as inexpensive ICs.

## Principle of Operation of PLL:



Fig. 8: Block diagram of PLL
Fig. 8 represents the block diagram of a PLL. It consists of a phase detector, Low Pass Filter (LPF), an amplifier and a Voltage Controlled Oscillator (VCO).

Let $\quad \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{s}}=$ Input voltage

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=\text { Input frequency } \\
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}=\text { Output voltage } \\
& \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\text { Output frequency }
\end{aligned}
$$

Before $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal is applied, PLL is said to be in free-running mode. When $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{s}}$ of frequency $f_{s}$ is applied to PLL, the phase detector (or mixer) compares the phase and frequency of $v_{s}$ to that of the output $v_{o}$ of VCO. If the 2 signals differ in frequency or phase angle, it generates an error voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$.

The phase detector is basically a multiplier circuit. Its o/p mainly consists of sumterm ( $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}+$ $f_{o}$ ) and difference term ( $f_{s}-f_{o}$ ). The LPF rejects sum term and allow difference term. The o/p of LPF is called error signal. It is amplified by the error amplifier to get a dc signal ' $v_{c}$ ' called control signal. This $v_{c}$ is applied to VCO. It shifts the VCO frequency in a direction to reduce the difference between $f_{s}$ and $f_{0}$. Once this action starts, PLL is said to be in capture state. The VCO frequency $f_{o}$ continues to change until it equals the $i / p$ frequency $f_{s}$. Then PLL is said to be in locking state. When locking occurs, the loop tracks any change in $f_{s}$.

Now the phase difference between $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ signals generates a corrective voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ to shift the VCO frequency from $f_{o}$ to $f_{s}$.

## Important definitions related to PLL:

1. Lock-in range: It is the range of frequencies over which the PLL can maintain lock with the incoming signals.
2. Capture range: It is the range of frequencies over which the PLL can acquire lock with the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signals.
3. Pull-in time: It is the total time taken by PLL to establish lock.

More details (Short notes) on lock-in range and capture range:


Fig. 9:
Lock-in range and capture range of PLL
Let us consider a monolithic IC with analog phase detector.
Its lock-in range is given by

$$
2 \Delta \mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{L}}=\mathbf{k}_{\mathrm{v}} \mathbf{k}_{\Phi} \mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{\pi}
$$

Where $\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{v}}=$ Voltage to frequency transfer coefficient of PLL (Hz/Volt) $\mathrm{k}_{\Phi}=$ Phase angle to voltage transfer coefficient of PLL (Volt/Radian)
and $\quad \mathrm{A}=$ Voltage gain of amplifier
Its capture range is given by

$$
2 \Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}=2 \sqrt{f_{1} \cdot \Delta f_{L}}
$$

Where $\mathrm{f}_{1}=\frac{1}{2 \pi R C}=3 \mathrm{~dB}$ frequency of LPF
$2 \Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{L}}=$ Total lock-in range
Fig. 9 shows the lock-in range $2 \Delta f_{\mathrm{L}}$ and capture range $2 \Delta \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{C}}$. Both ranges are expressed in $\%$ age of $f_{0}$. Both ranges are symmetrically located w.r.t. VCO frequency $f_{0}$. Lock-in range is always > capture range.

We need large capture range. But large capture range will make the PLL more susceptible to noise.

## COMPONENTS OF PLL

- Phase Detector (Phase comparator, or Mixer or multiplier circuit)
- Low Pass Filter
- Amplifier
- Voltage Controlled Oscillator


## Phase Detector:

Phase detector compares the phase and frequency of incoming signal $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{s}}$ to that of output $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$ of VCO.Its o/p mainly consists of sum term ( $f_{s}+f_{o}$ ) and difference term ( $f_{s}-f_{o}$ ). Output of phase detector is fed to the LPF.

There are 2 types of phase detectors: analog and digital. Abalanced modulator is used as analog phase detector. An XOR gate serves as a digital phase detector.

Most of the monolithic PLL ICs use analog phase detectors. For discrete PLLs, digital phase detectors are preferred because of their simplicity.

## Low Pass Filter:



Fig.10: Low Pass Filter of PLL
Low pass filter removes the high frequency components and noise. It also controls the dynamic characteristics of the PLL such as lock-in and capture ranges, bandwidth and transient response.

If filter bandwidth is reduced, the response time increases. But it also reduces the capture range.

This produces a high noise immunity and locking stability.

## Amplifier:

It is used to amplify the error signal, i.e., o/p of LPF.

## Voltage Controlled Oscillator:

Initially when no input signal is given to PLL, it runs with a free running frequency $f_{0}$. When input is given, PLL action starts. Then $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of amplifier. It is a dc control voltage.

This $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is applied to VCO. It shifts the VCO frequency in a direction to reduce the difference between $f_{s}$ and $f_{0}$. Once this action starts, PLL is said to be in capture state. The VCO frequency $f_{0}$ continues to change until it equals the $i / p$ frequency $f_{s}$. Then PLL is said to be in locking state. When locking occurs, the loop tracks any change in $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}$.

Now the phase difference between $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ signals generates a corrective voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ to shift the VCO frequency from $f_{o}$ to $f_{s}$.

MONOLITHIC PLL IC (NE/SE 565)
IC PLL 565 is available as a 14-pin DIP package andas a 10-pin metal can package.


Fig. 11(a):
Pin diagram of 565


Fig. 11(b): Block diagram of 565
Fig. 11 (a) and Fig. 11 (b) represent the pin diagram and block diagram of 565. When inputs at pin 2 and pin 3 are grounded, VCO output is given by

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{0,25}{R_{T} c_{T}} \mathrm{~Hz}
$$

Where $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{T}}(2 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ to $20 \mathrm{~K} \Omega)$ is external resistor connected to pin 8 and $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{T}}$ is external capacitor connected to pin 9 .

VCO free running frequency is adjusted by changing $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{T}}$ or $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{T}}$ and is kept at the center of $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ frequency range. PLL is $3.6 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$.

PLL is internally broken between VCO o/p and the phase comparator $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$. A short circuit between pins 4 and 5 connects the $\mathrm{VCO} o / p$ to the phase comparator for comparing $f_{o}$ and $f_{s}$. A Capacitor C is connected between pins 7 and 10 (Supply terminal) to make an LPF with the internal resistance of $3.6 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$

## APPLICATIONS OF PLL

1. Frequency Translation
2. Frequency Multiplication/Division
3. AM Detection
4. FM Demodulator
5. FSK Demodulator

## 1.Frequency Translation (frequency shifting):



Fig. 12: Frequency translation using PLL
Here, a mixer (or multiplier) and an LPF are externally connected to PLL as shown in Fig. 12. Let $f_{s}$ be the signal to be shifted in frequency (by an amount $f_{1}$ ). Let $f_{o}$ is the $o / p$ of VCO. Then $f_{s}$ and $f_{o}$ are the two inputs to the mixer (multiplier). Output of mixer contain $f_{o} \pm f_{s}$. $f_{o}+f_{s}$ is rejected by LPF. So, LPF o/p contains $f_{o}-f_{s}$.

This $f_{o}-f_{s}$ is given as $1^{\text {stinput }}$ to phase comparator. Offset (or translation) frequency $f_{1}$ is given as $2^{\text {nd }} \mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ to comparator. When PLL is in locked state,

$$
\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}-\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=\mathrm{f}_{1}
$$

i.e.,

$$
\mathbf{f}_{0}=\mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{s}}+\mathbf{f}_{1}
$$

Thus, $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}$ is translated by an amount $\mathrm{f}_{1}$.

## 2. Frequency Multiplication and Division:

## (a) Frequency Multiplication by N :



Fig. 13:Frequency Multiplier
Fig. 13shows the block diagram of a frequency multiplier. Here $\mathrm{a} \div \mathrm{N}$ network (counter) is inserted between VCO and phase comparator. Let $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}$ ' be the output. At locking,

$$
\begin{array}{ll} 
& f_{s}=f_{o}{ }^{\prime}=f_{0} / N \\
\text { i.e., } \quad \mathbf{f}_{0}=\mathbf{N} \mathbf{f}_{s}
\end{array}
$$

Thus, the circuit actsas a frequency multiplier.
(b) Frequency Division by M:

Here $\div \mathrm{N}$ network is not needed. If VCO is rich in harmonics, division is performed by locking $\mathrm{M}^{\text {th }}$ harmonic of VCO output to the input signal.

## 3. AM Detector:



Fig. 14: AM Detector using PLL
Fig. 14 shows the block diagram of AM detector using PLL. Here PLL is locked to the carrier frequency of $\mathrm{AM} \mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$. VCO o/p has same frequency of carrier. But it is $90^{\circ}$ out of phase with AM signal. So, AM signal is shifted in phase by $90^{\circ}$ before applying to multiplier. Thus, both inputs to multiplier are same in phase. Multiplier o/p consists of sum and difference terms. LPF allows only difference term. Output of LPF is demodulated o/p. This circuit has high selectivity and noise immunity.

## 4. FM demodulator:

Here PLL is locked to FM signal. VCO tracks the instantaneous frequency of the i/p signal. Output of LPF is demodulated o/p. It controls the VCO and maintains lock with the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ signal.

## 5. FSK Demodulator:

In digital data communication, binary data is transmitted by means of a carrier frequency which is shifted between two pre-set values. This type of transmission is called Frequency Shift Keying (FSK). The binary data can be retrieved using an FSK demodulator using PLL.

Problem 3: Determine the dc control voltage $v_{c}$ at lock, if the signal frequency $f_{s}=10 \mathrm{KHz}$, VCO free-running frequency is 10.66 KHz and the voltage to frequency transfer coefficient of VCO is $6600 \mathrm{~Hz} /$ Volt.

Solution:
We know that

$$
f_{s}=f_{0}+k_{v} v_{c}
$$

i, e., $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{f_{s}-f_{o}}{k_{v}}$
Given $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=10 \mathrm{KHz}=10000 \mathrm{~Hz}$
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=10.66 \mathrm{KHz}=10660 \mathrm{~Hz}$
And $\mathrm{k}_{\mathrm{v}}=6600 \mathrm{~Hz} /$ Volt
$\therefore$ DC control voltage $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{10000-10660}{6600}=-0.1 \mathrm{~V}$
Problem 4: For PLL, Determine the dc control voltage $v_{c}$ at lock, if the signal frequency $f_{s}=$ $100 \mathrm{KHz}, \mathrm{VCO}$ free running frequency is 5 MHz and the voltage to frequency transfer coefficient of VCO is $2 \mathrm{MHz} / \mathrm{Volt}$ and $\mathrm{N}=100$ in the frequency multiplier circuit given below. What is the dc voltage at lock?

Solution:


Given
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=100 \mathrm{KHz}$
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=5000 \mathrm{KHz}$
$\mathrm{N}=100$
$\therefore \mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=\frac{5000 \mathrm{KHz}}{N}=\frac{5000 \mathrm{KHz}}{100}=50 \mathrm{~Hz}$

$$
\mathbf{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{o}}{ }^{\prime}+\mathbf{k}_{\mathrm{v}} \mathbf{v}_{\mathrm{c}}
$$

i.e., $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{c}}=\frac{f_{s}-f_{o}{ }^{\prime}}{k_{v}}$

$$
=\frac{(100-50) \times 103}{2 \times 10^{6}}=25 \mathrm{mV}
$$

Problem 5: A PLL has a free running frequency of 500 KHz and bandwidth of low pass filter (LPF) is 10 KHz . Will the loop acquire lock for an input signal of 600 KHz ? Justify your answer. Assume that phase detector produces an o/p of 50 mV dc .

## Solution:

$O / p$ of phase detector contains sum term $f_{s}+f_{o}$ and difference term $f_{s}-f_{o}$
Given $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}=600 \mathrm{KHz}$ and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=500 \mathrm{KHZ}$
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}+\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=600 \mathrm{KHZ}+500 \mathrm{KHZ}=1100 \mathrm{KHz}$
$\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{s}}-\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{o}}=600 \mathrm{KHZ}-500 \mathrm{KHZ}=100 \mathrm{KHz}$.
Hence both sum and difference terms are outside the pass band.
So, loop will not acquire lock, irrespective of $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{c}}$ value given.

## QUESTION BANK ON UNIT-3

## Main Questions

1. What are different types of Electrical filters? Define and describe the frequency response of each type.
2. Describe a first order LPF/HPF and derive the necessary expression for its transfer function. Also derive an expression for the magnitude of the Transfer Function in dB.
3. (a) What is a band pass filter? Derive an expression for the transfer function of a wide band pass filter.
(b) Problem on BPF.
4. What is an all pass filter (APF)? With the help of a diagram derive the necessary expressions for the magnitude of its $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ and phase anglebetween $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$. What is the main application of APF?
5. With the help of pin connection diagram and functional diagram explain the operation of a 555 timer in monostablemode. Derive an expression its output pulse width.
6. With the help of pin connection diagram and functional diagram explain the operation of a 555 timer in astable mode.Derive an expression for for its time period/frequency and duty cycle.
7. With the help of a block diagram, explain the principle of operation of PLL.
8. Describe 565 VCO used in PLL using Pin diagram and functional diagram.
9. Explain a monolithic IC (566 IC PLL)
10. Describe a second order LPF/HPF and derive the necessary expression for its transfer function. Also derive an expression for the magnitude of the Transfer Function in dB.

## 2 Marks Questions

1. Distinguish between analog active and passive filters.
2. What are the advantages of analog active filters over analog passive filters?
3. Draw the circuit of a first order wide BPF.
4. Draw the circuit of a wide BRF.
5. Draw the circuit of a notch filter.
6. What is an APF and what is its main application?
7. Draw the Circuit of a first order LPF.
8. Draw the Circuit of a first order HPF.
9. Draw the Circuit of a second order LPF.
10. Draw the Circuit of a second order HPF.
11. List the applications of a 555 timer in various areas.
12. Draw the block diagram of a PLL used for frequency translation.
13. Draw the block diagram of a PLL used for frequency multiplier.
14. What is the role of a phased detector in PLL?
15. What is the role of an LPF in PLL?
16. Define the terms lock-in range, capture range and pull-in time.
17. List the applications of a 555 -timer used in monostable mode.
18. List the applications of a 555 -timer used in astable mode.
19. What is the role of reset input in 555 timer?
20. What is the role of Pin 5 in a 555 timer?

## Objective Questions

## Objective Questions for I Mid:

31.Active filters used in phase correction in analog systems are ------ filters.
(a) Low pass
(b) High pass
(c) Band pass (d) All pass
32.The roll off rate for $2^{\text {nd }}$ order HPF is
(a) $-30 \mathrm{~dB} / \operatorname{decade}(\mathrm{b})-\mathbf{4 0} \mathbf{d B} /$ decade (c) $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade( d ) $-10 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade
33.The roll off rate for $2^{\text {nd }}$ order LPF is
(a) - 30 dB / decade(b) - $\mathbf{4 0} \mathbf{~ d B} /$ decade (c) $-20 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade(d) $-10 \mathrm{~dB} /$ decade
34.The magnitude of transfer function of fist order LPF is

Ans: (b)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$ (b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
35.The magnitude of transfer function of fist order HPF is

Ans:(a)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
36.The magnitude of transfer function of Second order LPF is

Ans:(d)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$
(c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
37.The magnitude of transfer function of second order HPF is

Ans:(c)
(a) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f_{l}}{f}\right)^{2}}}$
(b) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{2}}}$ (c) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f l}{f}\right)^{4}}}$
(d) $\frac{A_{o}}{\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{f}{f_{h}}\right)^{4}}}$
38.The damping factor of a Butterworth filter is
(a) 1.06 (b) 1.73
(c) 1.44(d) . 707
39.First order BPF is a cascade of first order------- followed by first order -----respectively.
(a) HPF, LPF (b) LPF, LPF (c) HPF, HPF (d) LPF, HPF
40.Expression for the $f_{o}$ of BPF is $\qquad$
(a) $f_{h}+f_{l}$ (b) $f_{h} f_{l}$ (c) $\sqrt{\boldsymbol{f}_{\boldsymbol{h}} \boldsymbol{f}_{l}}$ (d) $f_{h}-f_{l}$

## Objective Questions for II Mid

41.Modulating voltage is applied at ----- of a 555 timer
(a) 3 (b) 4(c) 5(d) 7
42.Pulse width of a monostable multivibrator using PLL is $\qquad$
(a) 1.1 RC (b) 0.69 RC (c) $\mathrm{RC} \ln (0.69)(\mathrm{d}) \mathrm{RC} \ln 1.1$
43.555 timer in astable multivibrator mode is used for $\qquad$
(a) Pulse width modulation (PWM) (b) Pulse position modulation (PPM) (c) Both(d) None
44.If $R_{A}=R_{B}$, duty cycle of a 555 timer astable multivibrator is -------
(a) $0 \%$ (b) $\mathbf{5 0 \%}$ (c) $\mathbf{7 5 \%}$ (d) $\mathbf{1 0 0 \%}$
45.Formula for the time period dof a 555 timer astable multivibrator is
------
(a) $0.69\left(R_{A}+R_{B}\right) \mathbf{C}(b) \mathbf{0 . 6 9}\left(\mathbf{R}_{A}+\mathbf{2} \mathbf{R}_{B}\right) \mathbf{C}$
(c) $\left.\frac{\mathbf{1}}{\left(0.69\left(R_{A}+2 R_{B}\right) C\right.}\right) \mathrm{C}(\mathrm{d}) \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\left(0.69\left(R_{A}+R_{B}\right) C\right.}$
46.LPF in a PLL allows ------- frequency term.
(a) Difference term (b) Sum term (c) Both terms(d) None
47.Range of frequencies over which a PLL can acquire a lock is called
(a) Pull-in time (b) Lock-in range (c) Maintain range(d) Capture range 48.NE/SE 565 is a ----------.
(a) IC VCO (b) IC Phase detector(c) IC PLL(d) IC LPF 49.NE/SE 566 is a ----------.
(a) IC VCO (b) IC Phase detector(c) IC PLL(d) IC LPF
50. Which of the following is correct in case of PLL ----------.
(a) Capture range > Lock-in range(b)Lock-in range > Capture range
(c) Capture range $=$ Lock-in range (d) we can't say anything

## UNIT-4

## VOLTAGE REGULATORS AND CONVERTERS

## D TO A \& A TO D CONVERTERS

Some electronic systems operate on only digital signals. If analog signals are available, we need to convert them to digital form. This can be done by a circuit called Analog to Digital ('A to D' or A/D) converter or ADC.

Similarly, some electronic systems operate with only analog signals. If digital signals are available, we need to convert them to analog form. This can be done by a circuit called Digital to Analog ('D to A' or D/A) converter or DAC.

## DIGITAL TO ANALOG CONVERTERS (DACs)

A DAC is a circuit which converts digital signals into analog form.

## Basic DAC Technique:



Fig. 1: Schematic diagram of a DAC
Fig. 1 shows the schematic diagram of an $n$-bit DAC. Its $i / p$ is an $n$-bit binary word. It is combined with a reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ to produce an analog o/p signal. It may be voltage or current. If $o / p$ is voltage, it is given by
$v_{o}=\mathrm{K}_{\mathrm{FS}}\left(\mathrm{d}_{1} 2^{-1}+2^{-2}+\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . \mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}} 2^{-\mathrm{n}}\right)$
Where
$v_{o}=\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{FS}}=$ Full scale o/p voltage
$K=$ Scaling factor (usually $\mathrm{K}=1$ )
$\mathrm{d}_{1} \mathrm{~d}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{~d}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{n}$-bit binary fractional word with decimal point at the left.
$\mathrm{d}_{1}=$ MSB with a weight of $\frac{V_{F S}}{2}$
$\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}}=\mathrm{LSB}$ with a weight of $\frac{V_{F S}}{2^{n}}$

## Types of DACs:

1. Binary weighted resistor type DAC
2. r- ladder type DAC
3. Inverted R-2R ladder type DAC
4. BINARY WEIGHTED RESISTOR TYPE DAC


Fig. 2 (a): Binary weighted resistor type DAC
Fig. 2 (a) shows a binary weighted resistor type DAC. Here opamp is in inverting mode. We can also use non-inverting mode.

Opamp is a summing amplifier. It acts as a current-to-voltage converter.
$\mathrm{S} 1, \mathrm{~S} 2, \ldots \mathrm{Sn}$ are MOSFET switches used as Single pole double throw (SPDT) switches.
Upper end of any switch is connected to - ve terminal of opamp. Lower end of any switch $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{i}}$ ( $\mathrm{i}=1,2, \ldots \mathrm{n}$ ) has two positions. In left position, $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is grounded. In right position, it connects a resistor $2^{i} R$ to reference voltage $-V_{R}$. Polarity of $V_{R}$ may be $+v e$ or $-v e$. Here $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ is taken - ve.

From Fig. 2(a), we write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{I}_{0} & =\mathrm{I}_{1}+\mathrm{I}_{2}+\ldots+\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& =\frac{V_{R}}{2^{1} R} \mathrm{~d}_{1}+\frac{V_{R}}{2^{2} R} \mathrm{~d}_{2}+\ldots+\frac{V_{R}}{2^{n} R} \mathrm{~d}_{\mathrm{n}} \\
& =\frac{V_{R}}{R}\left\{\mathrm{~d}_{1} 2^{-1}+\mathrm{d}_{2} 2^{-2}+\ldots+\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}} 2^{-\mathrm{n}}\right\}
\end{aligned}
$$

$\therefore v_{o}=\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{o}} \mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}} \frac{R_{f}}{R}\left\{\mathrm{~d}_{1} 2^{-1}+\mathrm{d}_{2} 2^{-2}+\ldots+\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}} 2^{-\mathrm{n}}\right\}$
But general equation of a DAC is
$v_{o}=K V_{\mathrm{FS}}\left(\mathrm{d}_{1} 2^{-1}+2^{-2}+\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . \mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}} 2^{-\mathrm{n}}\right) \ldots$ (2)
Comparing eqs. (1) and (2). We get
$\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{f}}=\mathrm{R} \quad \mathrm{K}=1 \quad$ and $\quad \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{FS}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$
Accuracy and stability of this DAC depends on the accuracy and temperature tracking of resistors.

Fig. 2(b) show the transfer characteristics of a 3-bit weighted resistor DAC. It is a staircase waveform. The inclined dashed line passesthrough averages of o/p value in each step.


Fig. 2 (b) Waveform for binary weighted DAC

## Problem with this DAC:

It needs wide range of resistor values. We use large number of bits to increase the resolution. This increases the range of resistor values.

## Example:

If smallest resistor is $2.5 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$, largest one is $5.2 \mathrm{M} \Omega$. Such large resistance cannot be fabricated in IC form. Also, voltage drop acrossit affects the accuracy.

If smallest resistor is $<2.5 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$, it causes loading effect.
So, this type of DAC is very difficult to fabricate in IC form.

## 2. R-2R LADDER TYPE DAC

Wide range of resistors are required in binary weighted resistor DAC. This problem can be avoided by using $\mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder DAC , where only two resistor values are required.


Fig. 3 (a): R-2R ladder type DAC
Fig. 3 (a) shows a 3-bit R-2R ladder DAC. Its binary input word is $d_{1} d_{2} d_{3}$, where $d_{1}=$ and $\mathrm{d}_{3}=$ LSB. $\mathrm{S}_{1}, \mathrm{~S}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{S}_{3}$ are 3 MOSFET switches used as Single pole double throw (SPDT) switches.

Upper end of each switch is connected to - ve terminal of opamp. Lower end of any switch $S_{i}(i=1,2,3)$ has two positions. In left position, $S_{i}$ is grounded. In right position, it connects a resistor 2R to reference voltage $-V_{R}$. Polarity of $V_{R}$ may be + ve or $-v e$. Here $V_{R}$ is taken - ve.


Fig. 3 (b)


Fig. 3 (c)


Fig. 3 (d)
Fig. 3 (b) shows equivalent circuit for Fig. 3 (a), where $d_{1} d_{2} d_{3}=100$.
Using network analysis, Fig. 3 (b) reduces to Fig. 3 (c) and then Fig. 3 (d).
Voltage at node $\mathrm{C}=-V_{R} \cdot \frac{\frac{2 R}{3}}{2 R+\frac{2 R}{3}}=-V_{R} \cdot \frac{2 R}{8 R}=-\frac{V_{R}}{4}$
Then Fig. 3 (e) represents the final circuit.


Fig. 3 (e) Final equivalent circuit
From Fig. 3 (e), we get
$v_{o}=\frac{V_{R}}{4}\left(\frac{-2 R}{R}\right)=\frac{V_{R}}{2}=\frac{V_{F S}}{2}$
Similarly, we can find $v_{o}$ for any value of $\mathrm{d}_{1} \mathrm{~d}_{2} \mathrm{~d}_{3}$.

## 3. INVERTED R-2R LADDER TYPE DAC



Fig. 4(a): 3-bit Inverted ladder DAC
Fig. 4(a) shows a 3-bit Inverted ladder DAC. Compared to ladder DAC, positions of MSB and LSB are interchanged.
$\mathrm{S}_{1}, \mathrm{~S}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{S}_{3}$ are 3 MOSFET switches of SPDT type. In left position, $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is grounded. In right position, any switch is connected to the - ve terminal of an ideal opamp, which acts as a
virtual ground. Since both terminals of any switch are at ground potential, current flowing in any resistor branch is constant and independent of switch position (i.e., input binary word). Important property of this circuit is that current divides equally at each node. It is because equivalent resistance to the left of any node or right of any node is $2 R$.


Fig. 4 (b) Illustrative example with 2 mA current
Fig. 4 (b) illustrates the division of a 2 mA current at each node. For example, current divides equally as 1 mA to the left and right of node A .
Current remains constant in any resistive branch. So, nodal voltages remain constant at $\frac{V_{R}}{2^{0}}$, $\frac{V_{R}}{2^{1}}$ and $\frac{V_{R}}{2^{2}}$. But current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{o}}$ in feedback resistor depends on input binary word.

The circuit works on the principle of summing currents and operates in current mode.
Problem 4.1: The basic step of an 8-bit DAC is 10.2 mV . If 00000000 represents 0 Volts, what is the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ produced if the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ is 10010111 ?

## Solution:

The o/p produced for input 10010111

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =10.2 \mathrm{mV}\left(1 \times 2^{7}+0 \times 2^{6}+0 \times 2^{5}+1 \times 2^{4}+0 \times 2^{3}+1 \times 2^{2}+1 \times 2^{1}+1 \times 2^{0}\right) \\
& =10.2 \mathrm{mV} \times 151=1.54 \mathrm{~V}
\end{aligned}
$$

Problem 4.2:Calculate the values of LSB, MSB and full-scale output for an 8-bit DAC for 0 to 10 V range.

## Solution:

$\mathrm{LSB}=\frac{V_{F S}}{2^{n}}$ and MSB $=\frac{V_{F S}}{2}$
Given that $V_{F S}=10 \mathrm{~V}$ and $\mathrm{n}=8$
$\therefore \mathrm{LSB}=\frac{10 \mathrm{~V}}{256}=.039 \mathrm{~V}=39 \mathrm{mV}$
$\mathrm{MSB}=\frac{10 \mathrm{~V}}{2}=5 \mathrm{~V}$
Full scale $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}=V_{F S}-1$ LSB

$$
\begin{aligned}
& =10 \mathrm{~V}-0.039 \mathrm{~V} \\
& =9.961 \mathrm{~V}
\end{aligned}
$$

Problem 4.3: What $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage would be produced by a 4 -bit DAC whose $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ range is 0 to 10 V , for a digital input 0110 ?

Solution:
Output voltage $=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{FS}}\left(\mathrm{d}_{1} 2^{-1}+\mathrm{d}_{2} 2^{-2}+\mathrm{d}_{3} 2^{-3}+\mathrm{d}_{4} 2^{-4}\right)$
Given that $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{FS}}=10 \mathrm{~V}$ and $\mathrm{d}_{1} \mathrm{~d}_{2} \mathrm{~d}_{3} \mathrm{~d}_{4}=0110$
$\therefore$ Output voltage $=10 \mathrm{~V}\left(0 \times \frac{1}{2}+1 \times \frac{1}{4}+1 \times \frac{1}{8}+0 \times \frac{1}{16}\right)$

$$
=\frac{30}{8} \mathrm{~V}=3.75 \mathrm{~V}
$$

ANALOG TO DIGITAL CONVERTERS (DACs)
An ADC is a circuit which converts analog signals into digital form.

## Basic ADC Technique:



Fig. 5: Schematic diagram of an n-bit ADC
Fig. 5 shows the schematic diagram of an n -bit $\mathrm{ADC} . \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}$ its analog input voltage. Its digital $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is $\mathrm{d}_{1} \mathrm{~d}_{2} \ldots \mathrm{~d}_{\mathrm{n}}$, where $\mathrm{d}_{1}=$ MSB and $\mathrm{d}_{\mathrm{n}}=$ LSB.
Functional value of output $=D=d_{1} \mathbf{2}^{-1}+\mathbf{2}^{-2}+\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots . . d_{n} \mathbf{2}^{-n}$
ADC has 2 additional control lines START and EOC. START input indicates beginning of conversion, EOC (End of conversion) output indicates end of data conversion.

## Applications of ADCs:

(i) Microprocessor interfacing
(ii) To directly drive LCD and LED displays
(iii) Digital voltmeters

## Classification of ADCs:

ADCs are mainly classified as Direct type ADCs and Integrating type ADCs.
Direct type ADCs compare a given analog signal with internally generated equivalent signal.

## Direct type ADCs:

1. Flash type ADC
2. Counter type ADC
3. Servo tracking ADC
4. Successive approximation type ADC

Integrating type ADCs (Indirect type ADCs ) perform conversion in an indirect manner. They first convert the analog signal to a linear function of time (or frequency) and then to a digital code

## Integrating type ADCS:

1. Single slope ADC
2. Dual slope ADC

## Direct Type ADCs:

## 1. FLASH TYPE ADC (PARALLEL COMPARATOR TYPE ADC)

It is the simplest, fastest and costly ADC.


Fig. 6 (a):3-bit flash ADC
Fig. 6 (a) shows the circuit of a 3-bit flash ADC. It consists of a voltage divider, 7 comparators and an 8-line to 3-line priority encoder. Analog voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is applied to the +ve terminal of opamp comparators, $\mathrm{X}_{1}, \mathrm{X}_{2}, \ldots \mathrm{X}_{7}$ are the outputs of the comparators as shown. $X_{0}, X_{1}, \ldots X_{7}$ are the inputs to priority encoder, where $X_{0}=1 . Y_{2} Y_{1} Y_{0}$ is the binary output word where $Y_{2}=$ MSB and $Y_{0}=$ LSB.

8 resistors form a voltage divider between reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ and ground. Let $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ be the input, fed to - ve terminal of opamps, where $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ changes from $\frac{V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{7 V_{R}}{8}$ as shown.


Fig. 6 (b) Comparator

| Voltage input | Logic output X |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}>\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ | $\mathrm{X}=1$ |
| $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}<\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ | $\mathrm{X}=0$ |
| $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$ | Previous value |

Fig. 6 (c) Comparator truth table

| $\begin{gathered} \text { Input } \\ \text { voltage } \mathbf{v}_{a} \end{gathered}$ | X7 | X6 | X5 | X4 | X3 | X2 | X1 | X0 | Y2 | Y1 | Y0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 to $\frac{5 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $\frac{V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{2 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\frac{2 V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{3 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| $\frac{3 V_{R}}{8} \text { to } \frac{4 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| $\frac{4 V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{5 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $\frac{5 V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{6 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| $\frac{6 V_{R}}{8} \text { to } \frac{7 V_{R}}{8}$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| $\frac{7 V_{R}}{8}$ to $\frac{8 V_{R}}{8}$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Fig. 6 (d) Truth table for flash ADC

Fig. 6 (b) shows any comparator circuit. Fig. 6 (c) shows truth table of comparator. Fig. 6 (d) shows the truth table for the flash ADC. The circuit compares $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$ with each nodal voltage.

Here conversion takes place in parallel (simultaneously) rather than sequentially. Conversion time is limited by speed of comparators and speed of priority encoder.

## Drawback of the flash ADC:

An n -bit flash ADC requires $2^{\mathrm{n}}$ - 1 comparators where n is the number of bits in binary $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ word. i.e., number of comparators approximately doubles for each added bit. Also, the larger the value of n , the more complex is the priority encoder.

## SUCCESSIVE APPROXIMATION TYPE ADC

It uses successive approximation technique and converts analog voltage to digital form.


Fig. 7 (a)
Fig. 7 (a) shows the block diagram of an 8-bit successive approximation ADC. SAR stands for successive approximation register. Opamp ' A ' is used as a comparator. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is the analog voltage to be converted to digital form. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{d}}$ is the analog $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage of DAC. Output of SAR is a digital word $d_{1} d_{2} \ldots d_{n}$. where $d_{1}=$ MSB and $d_{8}=$ LSB.
This 8 -bit ADC requires 8 clock pulses for conversion process. An extra ( $\left.9^{\text {th }}\right)$ pulse is used to load the output register and reinitialize the circuit.

SAR finds required value of each bit in digital $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ by trial and error.
When SAR receives START command, it sets MSB to ' 1 ' and other bits to zero. So, trial word is 10000000 .

Comparator compares $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$ and $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}$.
If $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}<\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$, trial word is < correct word. Then MSB is left at 1 and next $\left(2^{\text {nd }}\right)$ MSB is set to 1 .

If $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}>\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$, trial word is $>$ correct word. Then MSB is set to 0 and next $\left(2^{\text {nd }}\right)$ MSB is set to 1 .
The procedure is repeated for all bits (from MSB to LSB). Whenever $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{d}}>\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$, the comparator changes its state.

For simplicity's sake, let us consider a 4-bit ADC as an example.
Then, Fig. 7 (b) indicates the conversion sequencefor a typical analog input.


Fig. 7 (b):Conversion sequence


Fig. 7 (c): DAC output waveform
Fig. 7 (c) shows DAC o/p voltage waveform. Here the o/p voltage becomes successively closer to the actual analog $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage.


Fig. 8 (a): Functional diagram of dual slope ADC.
Fig. 8 (a) shows functional diagram of dual slope ADC. Opamps $\mathrm{A}_{1}, \mathrm{~A}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{A}_{3}$ act as buffer, integrator and comparator respectively. $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is analog $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage. $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ is an internal reference voltage. Control logic circuitry is used to operate the switches $S_{1}$ and $S_{2}$. START input command indicates the beginning of conversion and EOC output command indicates the ending of conversion. The digital $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is taken at the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of the n -bit ripple counter.


## Fig. 8 (b) Output waveform for dual slope ADC

Fig. 8 (b) shows the o/p waveform for dual slope ADC. Before start command, $\mathrm{S}_{1}$ is grounded and $S_{2}$ is closed. Then any offset voltage due to $A_{1}, A_{2}$ and $A_{3}$ appears across capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{AZ}}$ ( AZ means auto zero). Later, when $\mathrm{S}_{2}$ opens, $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{AZ}}$ acts as memory and holds $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ offset compensating voltage.

Let START command is given at $t=t_{1}$. Then control logic opens $S_{2}$ and connects $S_{1}$ to $v_{a}$. It also enables counter start from zero count. The counter resets after $2^{n}$ clock pulses, say at $t=$ $t_{2}$. Let $T$ be the clock period. Then time of integration $T_{1}$ for $v_{a}$ is given by
$\mathrm{T}_{1}=\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}=2^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}$ where n is the number of bits of ripple counter.
During $\mathrm{T}_{1}$, output of integrator $v_{o}$ is - ve going ramp voltage.
After $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ control logic connects $\mathrm{S}_{1}$ to $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$. Now $-\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ is integrated and $v_{o}$ is a + ve going ramp voltage. When $v_{o}$ becomes zero at $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{3}$ (say after N clock pulses), control logic issues EOC command.

## Derivation:

$\mathrm{T}_{1}=\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}=2^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}$
$\mathrm{t}_{3}-\mathrm{t}_{2}=\mathrm{NT}$
For an integrator
$v_{o}=\frac{1}{R C} \int v_{i} \mathrm{dt}$
At $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{t}_{2}, \quad v_{o}=\mathrm{V}_{1}$ (as shown in figure)
Here $v_{i}=v_{a}$
$\therefore$ Eq. (3) becomes
$\mathrm{V}_{1}=-\frac{1}{R C} \int_{t_{1}}^{t_{2}} v_{a} d t=-\frac{v_{a}}{R C}\left(\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=\frac{v_{a}}{R C} 2^{n} \mathrm{~T} \quad\{\text { From eq. (1) }\} \tag{4}
\end{equation*}
$$

$\mathrm{V}_{1}$ is given in terms of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{V}_{1} & =-\frac{1}{R C} \int_{t_{3}}^{t_{2}}-V_{R} d t=\frac{V_{R}}{R C}\left(\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{3}\right) \\
& =\frac{V_{R}}{R C}(-\mathrm{NT}) \quad\{\text { using Eq. }(2)\}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
=-\frac{V_{R} N T}{R C} \tag{5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Eqs. (4) and (5) $\Rightarrow$
$-\frac{v_{a}}{R C} 2^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}=-\frac{V_{R}}{R C} \mathrm{NT}$
i.e., $\quad \mathbf{v}_{\mathbf{a}}=\mathbf{V}_{\mathbf{R}}\left(\frac{N}{2^{n}}\right)$

Since $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}$ and n are constant, $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}$ is directly proportional to N and is independent of $\mathrm{R}, \mathrm{C}$ and T.

## Advantages of dual slope ADC:

(i) It is available in monolithic form, which is compatible with microprocessors and LED displays.
(ii) It provides excellent noise rejection.
(iii) Suitable for accurate measurement of slowly varying signals (e.g.: outputs of thermocouples and weighing scales)
(iv) Used in many instrumentation and control systems.

## Disadvantage:

It has long conversion time (around 20 mSec ). i.e., it is slow.
Problem 4.4: A dual slope ADC uses a 16 -bit counter and a 4 MHz clock rate. The maximum $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage is +10 V . The maximum integrator $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage should be -8 V , when the counter has cycled through $2^{\mathrm{n}}$ counts. The capacitor used in the integrator is $0.1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$. Find the value of resistor R. Refer to Fig. 8 (a).

## Solution:

Clock period $=\frac{1}{4 \mathrm{MHz}}=\frac{1}{4 \times 10^{6}} \mathrm{~Hz}$
$\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}=2^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{T}=\frac{2^{16}}{4 \times 10^{6}}=16.38 \mathrm{mS}$
Output of integrator $v_{o}=\frac{v_{a}}{R C}\left(\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}\right)$
Given $v_{o}=-8 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=10 \mathrm{~V}$ and $\mathrm{C}=0.1 \times 10^{-6}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\therefore \mathrm{R} & =\frac{-1}{v_{o C}} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{a}}\left(\mathrm{t}_{2}-\mathrm{t}_{1}\right) \\
& =\frac{-1}{-8 \times 0.1 \times 10^{-6}} \times 10 \times 16.38 \times 10^{-3}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
=205 \Omega
$$

Problem 4.5: If analog voltage in the problem 4.4 sis 4.129 V , find the equivalent digital number.

Solution:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{a}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{R}}\left(\frac{N}{2^{n}}\right) \\
& \begin{aligned}
\therefore \mathrm{N} & =\frac{v_{a}}{v_{R}} 2^{\mathrm{n}} \\
& =\left(\frac{4.129 \mathrm{~V}}{8 \mathrm{~V}}\right) 2^{16} \\
& =33825
\end{aligned}
\end{aligned}
$$

Above decimal value is equivalent to the binary value 1000010000100001

## DAC/ADC SPECIFICATIONS

## 1. Resolution:

It is the smallest change in DAC output, when its $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ is changed. It is given as
Resolution $=\frac{V_{F S}}{2^{N}-1}$ volts ( $=1$ LSB increment)
Where $V_{F S}=$ Full scale o/p voltage
and $n=$ number of bits
Resolution of ADC is defined as the smallest change in analog input for one-bit change at the o/p.
Example: For an 8-bit DAC with $V_{F S}=10 \mathrm{~V}$,
Resolution $=\frac{10}{2^{8}-1}=0.3922$
\% Resolution $=$ Resolution $\times 100 \%=39.22 \%$

## 2. Linearity:

It tells how close is the actual $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of a DAC to its ideal $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$. It is expressed as a fraction of LSB or \% age of $V_{F S}$. It is determined by the fitted line passing through measured outputs.


Fig. 9: Linearity
If the staircase o/p waveform is symmetrical w.r.t. the line as shown in Fig. 9, DAC is said to be linear. Otherwise, DAC is said to have linearity error.

## 3. Offset and Gain Errors:

Offset error is the o/p of DAC for a digital code, for which the o/p should be zero. Gain error is the difference in slope between the gain of ideal DAC and actual gain. They are indicated in Fig. 10 and Fig. 11 respectively.


Fig. 10: Offset error


Fig. 11: Gain error

## 4. Settling Time:

It is the time taken by the DAC output to settle within a range of $\pm\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ LSB of its final value. It ranges from 100 nS to $10 \mu \mathrm{~S}$.

## 5. Accuracy:

(i) Absolute Accuracy:

It is the maximum deviation between actual $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ and ideal o/p of a DAC.
(ii) Relative accuracy:

It is the maximum deviation between actual $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ and ideal $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$, when gain and offset errors are removed.
(iii) It is the difference between the ideal and measured $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ for successive binary $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ codes.

## 6. Monotonicity:

A monotonic DAC is a DAC whose analog o/p increases for increase in its digital $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$. For a monotonic DAC, the error is $< \pm\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ LSB.
All commercially available DACs are monotonic.

## 7. Stability:

The performance of a DAC changes with temperature, age and power supply variations. So, all its parameters must be specified over full temperature range.

## VOLTAGE REGULATORS

A Voltage Regulator is a circuit that provides a constant voltage which is independent of variations in line voltage, load current and temperature.

## SERIES OP-AMP REGULATOR

## Classification of Voltage regulators:

Voltage regulators can be mainly classified as series (linear) and switching regulators.
In series regulator, a power transistor is connected between unregulated $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and load. The transistor operates in active (linear region). So, it is also called linear regulator. Voltage drops across it is used to maintain constant voltage.

In switching regulator, a power transistor is used as a high frequency switch. i.e., power transistor operates in cutoff or saturation region. It doesn't conduct current continuously. This gives more efficiency than series regulators.

Comparison between series and switching regulators:

| Series voltage regulators | Switching regulators |
| :--- | :--- |
| Few external parts required | More external parts |
| Simple design | Complicated design |
| Less noise | More noise |
| Less efficient | More efficient |
| More heat generation | Less heat generation <br> Only step-down operation is <br> possible. <br> Step-up, step-down and - ve volt <br> operations are possible |

First 3 points are advantages and remaining are disadvantages.


Fig. 1: Series OP-AMP regulator
A Voltage Regulator is a circuit that provides a constant voltage which is independent of variations inline voltage, load current and temperature.

Fig. 1 shows a regulated power supply using opamp. The circuit has 4 parts.

1. Reference Voltage Circuit (A Zener diode circuit)
2. Error Amplifier (An opamp)
3. Series Pass Transistor (A power transistor)
4. Feedback network (A voltage divider)

Let $\mathrm{V}_{\text {in }}=$ Unregulated input voltage input voltage
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Regulated $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage
$\mathrm{Q}_{1}=$ power transistor acting as a series pass transistor
$\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}=$ Reference voltage
$V_{o}^{\prime}=$ Output of error amplifier (opamp)
$\mathrm{R}_{1}-\mathrm{R}_{2}=$ Voltage divider

## Operation:

$Q_{1}$ is connected in series between $V_{i n}$ and $V_{o} . Q_{1}$ acts as an emitter follower. Thus, it provides sufficient current to drive the load. $\mathrm{R}_{1}-\mathrm{R}_{2}$ samples $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$. The sampled voltage is compared with $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ obtained by Zener diode.
$\left(\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}-\beta \mathrm{V}_{o}\right)$ is the input of error amplifier
$v_{o}{ }^{\prime}$ is the $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of error amplifier.
$v_{o}$ ' is used to drive $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$.
If $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ increases, $\beta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ also increases, where $\beta=\frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$. So, $\left(\mathrm{V}_{\text {ret }}-\beta \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}\right)$ reduces. Hence $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ of error amp also reduces.As a result, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ reduces (Here $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=V_{o}{ }^{\prime}$ for emitter follower). Thus, the increase in $\mathrm{v}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is nullified. Similarly, any decrease in $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is also compensated.

## IC VOLTAGE REGULATORS

Voltage regulators are available as monolithic ICs. They are mainly of 2 types: 3 terminal ICs and 723 General purpose IC

IC Voltage regulators can be available as:
(A) Three Terminal Fixed Voltage Regulators

1. Positive Voltage regulators (e.g.: 78XX series)
2. Positive Voltage regulators (e.g.: 79XX series)
(B) 723 General purpose Voltage Regulators

## 78XX (+ ve Voltage regulators):

They are fixed positive voltage regulators. XX is output voltage of the regulator. ( $\mathrm{XX}=5,6$, $8,12,15,18$ and 24 V ). For example, 7808 has an o/p voltage of +8 volts.

## 79XX (- ve Voltage regulators):

They are fixed negative voltage regulators. with output voltage options $-5 \mathrm{~V},-6 \mathrm{~V},-8 \mathrm{~V},-$ $12 \mathrm{~V},-15 \mathrm{~V},-18 \mathrm{~V},-24 \mathrm{~V}$. For example, 7908 has an o/p voltage of -8 volts.

Output options -2 V and -5.2 V are also available with 79XX series.
IC Voltage regulators are available in TO-3 (metal package) and TO-220 (Plastic package).


Fig. 2: A three terminal Voltage regulator

Fig. 2 shows a 3 terminal + ve IC Voltage regulator. Capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is connected between input terminal and ground. Capacitor $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is connected between output terminal and ground.
$\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{i}}$ is used to reduce the inductive effects due to long leads used. $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is used improve transient response.

## Important characteristics of $\mathbf{3}$ terminal IC regulators:

(i) They are available as 78 XX series and 79 XX series.
(ii) $\mathrm{V}_{\text {in }}>=\left(\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}+2\right)$ Volts (e.g.: If $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=5 \mathrm{~V}$, then $\mathrm{V}_{\text {in }} \geq 5+2$ (i.e., 7 V ), where $\mathrm{V}_{\text {in }}=$ Unregulated input voltage input voltage and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=$ Regulated o/p voltage
(iii) Output current of voltage regulator can be varied from 0 up toits rated value $I_{o(\max )}$. When it is $\mathrm{I}_{0(\max )}$, more heat is dissipated. So, heat sinks are provided to handle it.
(iv) IC has built in temperature sensor. It turns off IC when IC becomes too hot (when temperature $>125^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ). $\mathrm{O} / \mathrm{p}$ current drops and remains thereuntil IC is cooled sufficiently.

## Performance parameters of Voltage regulators:

1. Line regulation (or Input regulation)
2. Load Regulation
3. Ripple Rejection

## 1. Line regulation (or Input regulation):

It is the $\%$ change in $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ for a change in the $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{in}}$. It is expressed in mV or as $\%$ of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$. Its typical value for 7805 is 3 mV .

## 2. Load Regulation:

It is the change in $\mathrm{V}_{0}$ for a change in load current. It is expressed in mV or as a $\%$ of $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$. Its typical value for 7805 is 15 mV , for $5 \mathrm{~mA}<\mathrm{I}_{0}<1.5 \mathrm{~A}$.

## 3. Ripple Rejection:

The voltage regulator can also reduce the amplitude of the ripple voltage. It is expressed in dB . Its typical value for 7805 is 78 dB .

Limitations of 3 terminal regulators:

1. No short circuit protection
2. Output (+ve or -ve ) voltage is fixed

723 general purpose regulator can overcome the above limitations. It can be adjusted over a wide range of +ve or -ve regulated voltage. Boosting of current is also possible by connecting external components.


Fig. 3 (a): Functional Block Diagram of 723 regulator
Fig. 3 (a) shows the functional diagram of 723 regulator IC. It is available as 14-pin DIP package and 10 -pin metal can package. It has 2 separate sections.

Section1: It contains Zener diode, constant current source and reference amplifier. It produces a fixed voltage of 7 V at the terminal $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$. Because of constant current source, Zener diode outputs a fixed voltage.

Section2: It contains an error amplifier, a series pass transistor $Q_{1}$ and a current limit transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$. The error amplifier compares a sample of o/p voltage applied at the INV input terminal with a reference voltage $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ applied at the NI input terminal. The error (difference) signal controls the conduction of $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$.

These two sections are not connected internally. But IC provides the facility to connect.


Fig. 3 (b): Pin Diagram of 14-pin DIP of 723
Fig. 3 (b) shows the pin diagram of 723 for a 14-pin DIP.
723 AS A LOW-VOLTAGE REGULATOR


Fig. 4 (a): Pin Connections for a Low Voltage 723 Regulator


Fig. 4 (b): Functional Diagram for a Low Voltage Regulator
Fig. 4 (a) shows the schematic of 723 used as a low-voltage ( 2 to 7 V ) regulator. $\mathrm{V}_{\text {in }}$ is the unregulated $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is the regulated $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ is feedback to the INV terminal through $\mathrm{R}_{3}$. $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{N}}$ is the voltage at the non-inverting terminal NI.
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{NI}}=\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }} \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}$ (Here $\mathrm{R}_{1}-\mathrm{R}_{2}$ is acting as a voltage divider)
If $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$ becomes low, voltage at INV also becomes low. So, input of error amplifier becomes high and so its o/p also becomes high. This output drives $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$.So, voltage across load increases. Thus, initial drop in the load voltage is compensated. Similarly, any increase in the load voltage or changes in the input voltage are regulated.

Reference voltage is typically 7.15 V .
$\therefore \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=7.15 * \frac{R_{2}}{R_{1}+R_{2}}<7.15 \mathrm{~V}$
Thus, the circuit acts as a low-voltage regulator ( $<7 \mathrm{~V}$ )
The role of CL (Current limiting) and CS (Current sensing) terminals in Fig. 4 (b) is described below.

## Current Limit Protection (Role of CL and CS)



Fig. 5 (a) Characteristic Curve for Current Limiting


Fig. 5 (b) Current Limit Protection Circuit
The circuit in Fig. 4 (b) does not provide protection when current is large or under short circuit conditions. Circuit shown in Fig. 6 (b) provides such protection.

Current limiting refers to the ability of a regulator to prevent the load current from increasing above a preset value.

Fig. 5 (a) shows the characteristic curveof a current limited power supply. Here Output voltage remains constant up to $\mathrm{I}_{\text {limit. }}$. Beyond this point $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage drops. The value of $\mathrm{I}_{\text {limit }}$ is set by connecting an external resistor $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{sc}}$ between terminals CL and CS.

The CL terminal is also connected to output terminal $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}$. CS terminal is connected to the load. It is not shown inf Fig. 5 (b).

The load current produces a small voltage drop $\mathrm{V}_{\text {sense }}$ drop across $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{sc}}$. This voltage is applied to base emitter junction of $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$

When this voltage is nearly 0.6 V , transistor $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ tuns on
Now a part of the current from error amplifiergoes to the collector of $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$. Thus, base current of $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ decreases. Hence emitter current of $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ reduces. Thus, any increase in load current will be nullified. Similarly, any decrease in load current is also compensated.
Here, $\mathrm{I}_{\text {limit }}=\frac{V_{\text {sense }}}{R_{s c}}=\frac{0.5 \mathrm{~V}}{R_{s c}}$
This method of current limiting is also called current sensing technique.

## 723 AS A HIGH-VOLTAGE REGULATOR



Fig. 6: High Voltage 723 Regulator
723 can also be used as a high voltage regulator to produce $>7 \mathrm{~V}$.
Fig. 6shows the circuit of 723 used as high-voltage regular. Here the NI terminal is directly connected to $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$ through $\mathrm{R}_{3}$. So, voltage at the NI terminal is $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}$.

The error amplifier operates in non-inverting mode. Its gain is given by
$\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{v}}=1+\frac{R_{1}}{R_{2}}$

$$
\therefore \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{o}}=7.15\left(1+\frac{R_{1}}{R_{2}}\right)
$$

## SWITCHING REGULATORS (OR SWITCHED MODE REGULATORS)

In series regulator, a power transistor is connected between unregulated $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ and load. The transistor operates in active (linear region). So, it is also called linear regulator. Voltage drops across it is used to maintain constant voltage.

In switching regulator, a power transistor is used as a high frequency switch. i.e., power transistor operates in cutoff or saturation region. It doesn't conduct current continuously. Hence, the power transmitted across the pass transistor is in discrete pulses rather than as a steady current flow. When the device is cutoff, there is no current and so no power dissipation. In saturation region, thereis power dissipation, but it is less. This gives more efficiency than series regulators.

Switched voltage regulators rely on pulse width modulation (PWM) to control the average value of $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ voltage. The average value of a repetitive waveform depends on the area under the waveform. If the duty cycle is varied as shown in Fig. 7, the average value also changes correspondingly.


Fig. 7: PWM and Average Value
Advantages of Switching regulators over Series regulators:

1. More efficient
2. Less heat generation
3. Step-up, step-down and - ve volt operations are possible

## Disadvantages of Switching regulators:

1. They need more external parts
2. Design is complex
3. More noisy

## QUESTION BANK

## Main Ouestions

1. Describe a binary weighted resistor type ADC . What are the drawbacks of it?
2. Describe a $\mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder type ADC. What are its drawbacks?
3. Describe a binary weighted resistor type ADC.
4. With the help of diagrams and truth tables, explain the operation of a flash type ADC.
5. With the help of necessary diagrams, explain the operation of a Successive approximation type ADC.
6. With the help of necessary diagrams, explain the operation of a Dual slope ADC. Mention its advantages and drawbacks.
7. Compare various DACs. Describe the specifications of DACs/ADCs.
8. Distinguish between series and switching regulators. Describe the functioning of series opamp regulator.
9. What is the need of 723 regulator? Describe the pin diagram and functional diagrams of the same.
10.Describe how IC 723 is used as low-voltage regulator.
10. Describe how IC 723 is used as high-voltage regulator.
12.Describe a switching regulator and pulse width modulation used by it.

## 2 Marks Questions

1. Describe the basic DAC/ADC technique.
2. What is the problem with binary weighted resistor type ADC?
3. What is the drawback of $\mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder ADC ?
4. What are the advantages and disadvantages of a dual slope ADC?
5. Describe any two specifications of DACs/ADCs.
6. Mention the advantages of switching regulator. over series voltage regulators.
7. Mention the disadvantages of switching regulator. over series voltage regulators.
8. Define line regulation and load regulation.
9. What are the output voltage options available for $78 \mathrm{XX} / 79 \mathrm{XX}$ ?
10.What are the disadvantages of three terminal IC regulators?
11.Draw the pin diagram of 723 .
10. Draw the pin diagram of a 78 XX voltage regulator.

## Objective Questions

51. What is the weightage of LSB in binary weighted/ $\mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder DAC?
(a) $\frac{V_{F S}}{2}(\mathrm{~b})$
b) $\frac{V_{F S}}{2^{n}}$ (c)
(c) $V_{F S}$ (d) None of the above
52.What is the weightage of MSB in binary weighted/ $\mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder DAC?
(a) $\frac{V_{F S}}{2}$
(b) $\frac{V_{F S}}{2^{n}}$
(c) $V_{F S}$ (d) None of the above
53.Which type of DAC has less power dissipation?
(a) Binary weighted DAC(b) R-2R ladder DAC(c) Inverted R-2R

## ladder DAC(d) Flash DAC

54.START and EOC commands are used in -_ type ADC.
(a) Successive approximation ADC(b)Dual slope ADC(c) Both
(d) They are used for only DACs
55. - is the fastest type of ADC.
(a) Flash ADC (b) Counter type ADC(c) Dual slope DAC(d) Successive approximation ADC
56.Priority encoder is required in - type of ADC.
(a) Parallel comparatorADC(b) Counter type ADC(c) Dual slope DAC(d)

Successive approximation ADC
57.A 4-bit Successive approximation ADC needs _ clock pulses for A to D conversion process.
(a) 4(b) 5(c) 8(d) None
58.--------- is the difference in slope between the gain of ideal DAC and actual gain of DAC.
(a) Gain Error(b) Linearity error(c) Offset error (d) None
59.Which DAC acts in current mode?
(a) Binary weighted $\operatorname{DAC}(b) \mathrm{R}-2 \mathrm{R}$ ladder $\mathrm{DAC}(\mathbf{c})$ Inverted $\mathbf{R}-\mathbf{2 R}$
ladder DAC(d) Flash DAC
60.Output of DAC for a digital code, for which the o/p should be zero is called $\qquad$
(a) Gain Error(b) Linearity error(c) Offset error (d) None
61.For 723 low voltage regulator, $\mathrm{V}_{\text {ref }}=$ $\qquad$
(a) $0 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~b}) 7.15 \mathrm{~V}$ (c) $5 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~d}) 10 \mathrm{~V}$
62.In 723 DIP pack, output voltage is taken at pin ------.
(a) 3(b) 5 (c) 6 (d) 10
63.Unit for ripple rejection is $\qquad$
(a) $\mathrm{mA}(\mathrm{b}) \mathrm{mV}$ (c) No rejection(d) $\mathbf{d B}$
64.Unit for Load rejection is $\qquad$
(a) $\mathrm{mA}(\mathbf{b}) \mathbf{m V}$ (c) No rejection(d) dB
65.Unit for Line rejection is $\qquad$
(a) $\mathrm{mA}(\mathbf{b}) \mathbf{m V}$ (c) No rejection(d) dB
66.In three-terminal + ve IC voltage regulator, pin 2 represents.
(a) Unregulated input(b) Regulated output(c) Ground (d) $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{CC}}$
67.Output of 7809 IC is ----------- Volts.
(a) 7 (b) 8 (c) 9 (d) -9
68.Output of 7910 IC is ----------- Volts
(a) - 10(b)10(c) -7(d) - 9
69.Series pass transistor in series opamp regulator is used as
----------..
(a) Heat $\operatorname{sink}(\mathbf{b})$ Emitter follower(c) Load(d) None
70.If regulated output of a 3 terminal IC regulator is 4 V , the right choice for unregulated input is $\qquad$
(a) 3(b) 4(c) 5(d) 6

## Topic from UNIT-2

## SINUSOIDAL OSCILLATORS

## Oscillator:

Oscillator is a circuit that produces an ac voltage or current waveform. The waveform may be sinusoidal or non-sinusoidal. In later case, it is normally called a waveform generator.

An oscillator doesn't need any input. It takes the energy from de supply and converts it to ac signal. A sinusoidal oscillator can be realized by placing a frequency-selective network in the feedback path of an amplifier. The active device used in amplifier may be a transistor or opamp. Feedback is + ve feedback.

## Types of Oscillators:

1. RC Phase Shift Oscillator
2. Wien Bridge Oscillator
3. Colpitt's Oscillator
4. Hartley Oscillator
5. Clap Oscillator
6. Crystal Oscillator

Principle of Oscillations (Barkhausen criterion):


Fig. 1

Fig. 1 represents the basic schematic of an oscillator. Her
$v_{i}=$ Input voltage
$v_{o}=$ Output voltage
$v_{f}=$ Feedback signal
A = Gain of basic amplifier
$\beta=$ Gain of frequency selective network = feedback factor
Let the points 1 and 2 are not connected. Then let us apply the input signal $v_{i}$.
From Fig. 1, We get $v_{f}=\mathrm{A} \beta v_{i}$
If the values of $A$ and $\beta$ are adjusted such that $A=1$,
Then $v_{f}=v_{i}$
Now let us connect points ' 1 ' and ' 2 ' and remove external signal $v_{i}$, the circuit will continue to provide same output, without external input.

## Barkhausen Criteria:

There are two conditions to get oscillations. They are
$|A \beta|=1$
$<\mathrm{A} \beta=0^{0}$ or multiple of $360^{\circ}$
Above two conditions are called Barkhausen criteria.
First condition says that magnitude of loop gain $\mathrm{A} \beta$ is 1 .
Second condition says that total phase shift of the circuit is $0^{0}$ or multiple of $360^{\circ}$.

## Practical considerations:

Suppose A $\beta$ is exactly 1 . Then due to ageing, replacement of transistors, temperature, changes in circuit parameters $\mathrm{A} \beta$ may become $<1$. Then gain (or $\mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ ) of the circuit goes on decreasing. So, oscillations will die out. ( 1 to $5 \%$ ) So, $\mathrm{A} \beta$ is taken slightly more than unity. Then o/p will go on increasing. But it is limited by the non-linearity of active device. Thus o/p becomes constant when the active device enters saturation.

There is no ac input to an oscillator. It uses noise signal like switching transient as the initial input.

## UNIT-5

## Digital ICs

## BASIC CMOS DIGITAL LOGIC GATE

One of the main disadvantages of the TTL logic series is that the gates are based on bipolar transistor logic technology and as transistors are current operated devices, they consume large amounts of power from a fixed +5 volt power supply. Also, TTL bipolar transistor gates have a limited operating speed when switching from an "OFF" state to an "ON" state and viceversa called the "gate" or "propagation delay". To overcome these limitations complementary MOS called "CMOS" logic gates using "Field Effect Transistors" or FET's were developed.

As these gates use both P-channel and N-channel MOSFET's as their input device, at quiescent conditions with no switching, the power consumption of CMOS gates is almost zero, ( 1 to 2 uA ) making them ideal for use in low-power battery circuits and with switching speeds upwards of 100 MHz for use in high frequency timing and computer circuits.


Fig6.5: 2-input NAND gate
This CMOS gate (fig 6.5) example contains 3 N -channel MOSFET's, one for each input $\mathrm{FET}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{FET}_{2}$ and one for the output $\mathrm{FET}_{3}$. When both the inputs A and B are at logic level " 0 ", $\mathrm{FET}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{FET}_{2}$ are both switched "OFF" giving output logic "1" from the source of $\mathrm{FET}_{3}$. When one or both of the inputs are at logic level "1" current flows through the corresponding FET giving an output state at Q equivalent to logic " 0 ", thus producing a NAND gate function.

For example, CMOS NAND gate:


Fig 6.6: CMOS NAND gate
In fig 6.6 the transistors $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{3}$ are series-connected complementary pair from the inverter circuit. Both are controlled by the same input signal (input A), the upper transistor turning off and the lower transistor turning on when the input is "high" (1), and vice versa. The transistors $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{4}$ are similarly controlled by the same input signal (input B ), and how they will also exhibit the same on/off behaviour for the same input logic levels. The upper transistors of both pairs $\left(\mathrm{Q}_{1}\right.$ and $\left.\mathrm{Q}_{2}\right)$ have their source and drain terminals paralleled, while the lower transistors $\left(\mathrm{Q}_{3}\right.$ and $\left.\mathrm{Q}_{4}\right)$ are series-connected. What this means is that the output will go "high" (1) if either top transistor saturates, and will go "low" (0) only if both lower transistors saturate. The following sequence of illustrations shows the behaviour of this NAND gate for all four possibilities of input logic levels ( $00,01,10$, and 11 ):


Fig 6.7 CMOS AND gate
A CMOS NOR gate circuit (fig 6.8) uses four MOSFETs just like the NAND gate, except that its transistors are differently arranged. Instead of two paralleled sourcing (upper) transistors


Fig 6.8: CMOS NOR Gate
connected to $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{dd}}$ and two series-connected sinking (lower) transistors connected to ground, the NOR gate uses two series-connected sourcing transistors and two parallel-connected sinking transistors like this: As with the NAND gate, transistors $\mathrm{Q}_{1}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{3}$ work as a complementary pair, as do transistors $\mathrm{Q}_{2}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{4}$. Each pair is controlled by a single input signal. If either input A or input B are "high" (1), at least one of the lower transistors $\left(\mathrm{Q}_{3}\right.$ or $\left.\mathrm{Q}_{4}\right)$ will be saturated, thus making the output "low" (0). Only in the event of both inputs being "low" (0) will both lower transistors be in cutoff mode and both upper transistors be saturated, the conditions necessary for the output to go "high" (1). This behavior, of course, defines the NOR logic function.

The OR function may be built up from the basic NOR gate with the addition of an inverter stage on the output (fig 6.9):


Fig 6.9: CMOS OR Gate

## COMBINATIONAL CIRCUITS

Unlike Sequential Logic Circuitswhose outputs are dependent on both their present inputs and their previous output state giving them some form of Memory, the outputs of Combinational Logic Circuits (fig 7.1)are only determined by the logical function of their current input state, logic " 0 " or logic " 1 ", at any given instant in time as they have no feedback, and any changes to the signals being applied to their inputs will immediately have an effect at the output. In other words, in a Combinational Logic Circuit, the output is dependant at all times on the combination of its inputs and if one of its inputs condition changes state so does the output as combinational circuits have "no memory", "timing" or "feedback loops".


Fig 7.1 Block diagram of combinational circuits

Combinational Logic Circuits are made up from basic logic NAND, NOR or NOT gates that are "combined" or connected together to produce more complicated switching circuits. These logic gates are the building blocks of combinational logic circuits. An example of a combinational circuit is a decoder, which converts the binary code data present at its input into a number of different output lines, one at a time producing an equivalent decimal code at its output.

Combinational logic circuits can be very simple or very complicated and any combinational circuit can be implemented with only NAND and NOR gates as these are classed as "universal" gates. The three main ways of specifying the function of a combinational logic circuit are:

- Truth Table Truth tables provide a concise list that shows the output values in tabular form for each possible combination of input variables.
- Boolean Algebra Forms an output expression for each input variable that represents a logic "1"
- Logic Diagram Shows the wiring and connections of each individual logic gate that implements the circuit.
and all three are shown in fig 7.2.


Fig 7.2 example of combinational circuit
As combinational logic circuits are made up from individual logic gates only, they can also be considered as "decision making circuits" and combinational logic is about combining logic gates together to process two or more signals in order to produce at least one output signal according to the logical function of each logic gate. Common combinational circuits made up from individual logic gates that carry out a desired application include Multiplexers, Demultiplexers, Encoders, Decoders, Full and Half Addersetc.

## TTL-74XX \& CMOS 40XX series ICs:

## BIPOLAR 74XX

7400 series parts were constructed using bipolar transistors, forming what is referred to as transistor-transistor logic or TTL. Bipolar devices are also limited to a fixed power supply voltage, typically 5 V.As integrated circuits in the 7400 series were made in different technologies, usually compatibility was retained with the original TTL logic levels and power supply voltages.

- 74 - the "standard TTL" logic family had no letters between the "74" and the specific part number.
74L - Low power (compared to the original TTL logic family), very slow
- H - High speed (still produced but generally superseded by the S-series, used in 1970s era computers)
S - Schottky (obsolete)
LS - Low Power Schottky
AS - Advanced Schottky
- ALS - Advanced Low Power Schottky
- F - Fast (faster than normal Schottky, similar to AS)


## CMOS 40XX

The 40XX series is a family of industry standard integrated circuits which implement a variety of logic functions using Complementary Metal-Oxide-Semiconductor technology, as a lower power and more versatile alternative to the 7400 series of TTL logic chips. Almost all IC manufacturers active during the era fabricated chips from this series.

4000 series parts had the advantage of lower power consumption, wider range of supply voltages ( 3 V to 15 V ), and simpler circuit design due to the vastly increased fanout. However their slower speed (initially about 1 MHz operation, compared with bipolar TTL's 10 MHz ) limited their applications to static or slow speed designs. Later, new fabrication technology largely overcame the speed problems, while retaining backward compatibility with most circuit designs. Although all semiconductors can be damaged by electrostatic discharge, the high impedance of CMOS inputs makes them more susceptible than bipolar transistor-based, TTL,
devices. Eventually, the advantages of CMOS (especially the later series such as 74 HC ) edged out the older TTL chips, but at the same time ever increasing LSI techniques edged out the modular chip approach to design.

- Supply: 3 to 15 V , small fluctuations are tolerated.
- Inputs have very high impedance (resistance), this is good because it means they will not affect the part of the circuit where they are connected. However, it also means that unconnected inputs can easily pick up electrical noise and rapidly change between high and low states in an unpredictable way. This is likely to make the IC behave erratically and it will significantly increase the supply current. To prevent problems all unused inputs MUST be connected to the supply (either + Vs or 0V), this applies even if that part of the IC is not being used in the circuit!
- Outputs can sink and source only about 1 mA if you wish to maintain the correct output voltage to drive CMOS inputs. If there is no need to drive any inputs the maximum current is about 5 mA with a 6 V supply, or 10 mA with a 9 V supply (just enough to light an LED). To switch larger currents you can connect a transistor.
- Fan-out: one output can drive up to 50 inputs.
- Gate propagation time: typically 30 ns for a signal to travel through a gate with a 9 V supply, it takes a longer time at lower supply voltages.
- Frequency: up to 1 MHz , above that the 74 series is a better choice.
- Power consumption (of the IC itself) is very low, a few $\mu \mathrm{W}$. It is much greater at high frequencies, a few mW at 1 MHz for example.


## Example common 40XX series chips

- 4000 - Dual 3-Input NOR Gate and Inverter
- 4001 - Quad 2-Input NOR Gate
- 4002 - Dual 4-Input NOR Gate OR Gate
- 4008 - 4-Bit Full Adder
- 4010 - hex non-inverting buffer
- 4011 - Quad 2-Input NAND Gate
- 4017 - Decade Counter / Johnson Counter
- 4511 - BCD to 7-segment LED driver


## TTL ICS CODE CONVERTERS

In this section we will examine some methods of using combinational logic circuits to convert from one code to another.

## BCD to BINARY CONVERSION:

One method of BCD to binary conversion uses adder circuits. This basic conversion process is as follows:

1. The value of each bit in the binary number is represented by a binary number
2. All the binary representations of the weights of the bits that are 1 s in the BDC are added
3. The result of this addition is the binary equivalent of the BCD number

A more concise statement of this operation is:
The binary numbers representing the weights of the BCD bits are summed to produce the total binary number.

Let's examine an 8 -bit BCD code (one that represents a 2-digit decimal numer) to understand the relationship between BCD and binary. For instance, you already know that the decimal number 87 can be expressed in BCD as


The left-most 4-bit group represents 80 , and the right-most 4 -bit group represents 7 . That is, the left-most group has a weight of 10 , and the right-most group has a weight of 10 , and the right most group has a weight of 1.Within each group, the binary weight of each bit is as follows:

## Ten's digit

Weight
Bit Destination
$\begin{array}{llll}80 & 40 & 20 & 10\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}B_{3} & B_{2} & B_{1} & B_{0}\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{llll}A_{3} & A_{2} & A_{1} & A_{0}\end{array}$

The binary equivalent of each BCD bit is a binary number representing the weight of that bit within the total BCD number. This representation is given in Table 7.1.

| BCD BIT | BCD Weight | Binary Representation |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | $\mathbf{6 4}$ | $\mathbf{3 2}$ | $\mathbf{1 6}$ | $\mathbf{8}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ |
| A0 | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ |
| A1 | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| A2 | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| A3 | $\mathbf{8}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| B0 | $\mathbf{1 0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| B1 | $\mathbf{2 0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| B2 | $\mathbf{4 0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| B3 | $\mathbf{8 0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |

Table 7.1
If the binary representations for the weights of all the 1 s in the BCD number are added, the result is the binary number that corresponds to the BCD number.

There are a number of possibilities for the representation of a decimal number into its equivalent binary code for example 8-4-2-1 and 2-4-2-1 codes are two of the most popular ones for binary code display (BCD). While the conversion of 8-4-2-1 BCD to decimal one is of most importance by the point of view of application. This conversion can be carried out with the use of TTL logic integrated circuits or by diode matrix. Here we will be discussing these two methods i.e.

1. Dotmatrixand
2. TTL logic system(transistor transistor logic)

## BCD to decimal equivalent conversion using diode matrix system

This system i.e. diode matrix system(fig 7.3) can be implemented for the purpose of conversion of one number system to the other one with the help of a series of interconnected diodes. There when it is concerned about conversion of a BCD code to its decimal equivalent them there exists to ports one that four inputs i.e. $1,2,4,8$ and upon switching of them it results into output of a decimal indicator showing a number from 0 to 9 . When it is required to give a desired output decimal indicator there must not be any connection of the indicator to ground through diode because in that diode will make it short circuited. Now in order to give an output indicating the decimal 7 it will required input as:

| - | Input | 1 | set |  | to | 1 | i.e. | switched |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | ---: |$\quad$ on

- Input 8 set to 0 i.e. switched off


Fig 7.3 Dot Matrix System

As soon as the system receives these inputs it will result in indication of a decimal 7 at output. Because there all the output indicator circuits are so interconnected that upon application of this particular input it will short circuit all the other indicator circuits except that of 7 it will make the output to be set at 7 as will to retrieved too, at output. In this way there exist a particulars combination of inputs i.e. $1,2,4$ and 8 for indication of each and every digit from 0 to 9.

## Conversion of BCD code using TTL logic

There are a number of bipolar integrator circuits that were introduces in 1964 of the IC series 7400. And many decoder ICs are also there in market some of them are those of the series from 7441 to 7448 and also in TTL series it is 7400 series. There are some characteristics regarding the family that does not vary from one member to the other one that can be listed as:

- The \begin{tabular}{c}
output <br>
- capabilities <br>
Characteristic

$\quad$

regarding
\end{tabular}

- The input loading if the device


Fig 7.4 BCD to decimal conversion using TTL logic
Whereas the variations that make them differ from one to another is drive capability to suite the load applied to the output like whether it is going to be a nixie tube, seven segment displays or it is a LED display. The circuit (fig 7.4), which is generally implemented, uses NAND gate circuit in its circuitry which is adopted in most of the TTL logic circuits. Here 0 is the output which inverted in nature against the input logic 1 . This 0 logic refers to a true condition while 1 stands for a false one which is in oppose of generality. The decoding of all the inputs is carried out explicitly. As the device is capable of decoding the decimal numbers from 0 to 1 so all the other decimal numbers i.e. from 10 to 15 obtains BCD code as false code of false logic. Here also, a particular binary code exists for each representation of each decimal number which is nothing but a combination of four bits. On application of 0010 it will result in production of decimal 2 similarly input 0011 will give its output as 3 in this way there are 16 combinations of these bits but only 10 of them are used for the purpose of BCD conversion. While the others ones i.e. from 1010 to 1111 all are used for the purpose of blanking the screen i.e. to make all the output terminals attain a zero value.

In spite of its feature of driving high power output the IC cannot be implemented for general
purpose indicating devices like a seven segment display.

## Standard ICs for a combinational circuit

-Binary arithmetic circuits,

- Decoders,
- Encoders,
- Multiplexers,
- Code converters,
- Digital comparator for magnitude and equality,
- Parity generators and checkers $2^{\mathrm{n}}$
- Bit wise 'AND', 'OR', 'NOT' logic processing circuits.


## DECODER

A Decoder is a multi-input, multi-output logic circuit (fig 7.5) which converts coded inputs into coded outputs, where the input and output codes are different. e.g. n-to- $2^{n}$, binarycoded decimaldecoders.

The encoded information is presented as a $\mathbf{n}$ inputs producing $2^{\mathbf{n}}$ possible outputs.


Fig 7.5 Block diagram of decoder

## BINARY DECODER ( 74XX138 DECODER):

In the case of the $74 \times x 138$ (fig 7.6), these control lines consist of one active high control line (G1) and two active-low control lines (G2A, pin 4 and G2B). Thus, the 74 xx 138 will only
be in its 'decoding' mode if G1 is at logic ' 1 ' and G2A and G2B are at logic ' 0 '. The $74 \times x 138$, whose generic product name is '3-to-8 Line Decoder/Multiplexer', obeys the truth table shown in Table 1. The outputs of the $74 \times x 138$ are 'active-low', i.e., the enabled output goes to logic ' 0 ' while all the other outputs are at logic ' 1 '.


Fig 7.6: IC 74138 (3-8 decoder) logic symbol and functional truth table

## THE 74XX139 DUAL 2-TO-4 DECODER:

The 74xx139 (fig 7.7) consist of two independent and identical 2-to-4 decoders. The enable inputs and outputs of IC 74xx 139 are active LOW.


| INPUTS |  |  | OUTPUTS |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{n} \overline{\mathrm{E}}$ | $\mathrm{nA} \mathrm{A}_{0}$ | $n \mathrm{~A}_{1}$ | $\mathrm{n} \bar{Y}_{0}$ | $\mathrm{n} \bar{Y}_{1}$ | $n \bar{Y}_{2}$ | $\mathrm{n} \bar{Y}_{3}$ |
| H | X | X | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | L | H | H | H |
| L | H | L | H | L | H | H |
| L | L | H | H | H | L | H |
| L | H | H | H | H | H | L |

Fig.7.7 logic symbol and the functional table of IC 74xx139.

## DEMULTIPLEXERS



Fig 7.8 Logic symbol of demultiplexer

The logic symbol of a demultiplexer(as shown in fig 7.8) is a circuit that receives information on a single line and transmits this information on one of $2^{n}$ possible output lines. The selection of specific output line is controlled by the values of nselection lines. For example, each of the 16 outputs can be connected through a resistor and then through an LED to serve as a simple 16 LED controller. The LED can be chosen at random by the status of the 4 line selector inputs. However, due to the internal structure of the 74154, only one output can be enabled at a time. This chip is often used in demultiplexing applications, such as digital clocks, LED matrices, and other graphical outputs.


Fig 7.9a Pin Diagram of 74LS154

Function Table

| Inputs |  |  |  |  |  | Outputs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G1 | G2 | D | C | B | A | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| L | L | L | L | L | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | L | L | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | L | H | L | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | H | L | L | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | L | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | L | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | H | L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H | H |
| L | L | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H |
| L | L | H | H | H | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H |
| L | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L |
| L | H | X | X | X | X | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| H | L | X | $x$ | X | X | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| H | H | X | $\times$ | X | X | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |

Table 7.2 Functional Truth Table of 74LS154

The pin diagram and functional truth table are shown in fig 7.9a and table 7.2. Each or these 4-line-to-16-line decoders utilize TTL circuitryto decode four binary-coded inputs into one of sixteenmutually exclusive outputs when both the strobe inputs, G1and G2, are low. The demultiplexing function is performedby using the 4 input lines to address the output line, passingdata from one of the strobe inputs with the other strobeinput low. When either strobe input is high, all outputs arehigh. These demultiplexers are ideally suited for implementinghighperformance memory decoders. All inputs are bufferedand input clamping diodes are provided to minimizetransmission-line effects and thereby simplify system design.

## ENCODER



Fig 7.10: 4-to-2 Binary Encoder( $2^{\mathrm{n}} \mathrm{xn}$ )
An encoder is a digital circuit that performs the inverse operation of a decoder. An encoder has $2^{\mathrm{n}}$ input lines and $n$ output lines. An example of 4-2 line encoder is shown in fig 7.10. In encoder the output lines generate the binary code corresponding to the input valueOne of the main disadvantages of standard digital encoders is that they can generate the wrong output code when there is more than one input present at logic level " 1 ". For example, if we make inputs $D_{1}$ and $D_{2}$ HIGH at logic " 1 " at the same time, the resulting output is neither at " 01 " or at " 10 " but will be at "11" which is an output binary number that is different to the actual input present. Also, an output code of all logic " 0 "s can be generated when all of its inputs are at " 0 " OR when input $D_{0}$ is equal to one.

## THE 74XX147 (DECIMAL TO BCD ENCODER):

The decimal to BCD encoder, usually has ten input lines and four output lines. Fig 7.11a and table 7.3 shows the logic symbol for IC $74 \times x 147$ and its functional truth table. It has 4 input lines and 4 output lines. Both input and output lines are asserted active LOW. If all input lines are 1 then all outputs are 1 .


Fig 7.11a: Pin diagram of 74LS147

FUNCTION TABLE

| INPUTS |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | OUTPUTS |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\bar{A}_{0}$ | $\bar{A}_{1}$ | $\bar{A}_{2}$ | $\bar{A}_{3}$ | $\bar{A}_{4}$ | $\bar{A}_{5}$ | $\bar{A}_{6}$ | $\bar{A}_{7}$ | $\bar{A}_{8}$ | $\bar{Y}_{3}$ | $\bar{Y}_{2}$ | $\bar{Y}_{1}$ | $\bar{Y}_{0}$ |
| H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H |
| x | x | x | x | x | x | x | X | L | L | H | H | L |
| X | X | X | X | X | X | X | L | H | L | H | H | H |
| X | X | X | X | X | X | L | H | H | H | L | L | L |
| X | X | X | X | X | L | H | H | H | H | L | L | H |
| X | X | X | X | L | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | L |
| X | X | X | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H | H |
| X | X | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | L |
| X | L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L | H |
| L | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | H | L |

Table 7.3Functional truth table of 74LS147

### 7.6.1 PRIORITY ENCODER:

The level of each input pin and if there was more than one input at logic level " 1 " the actual output code would only correspond to the input with the highest designated priority. Then this type of digital encoder is known commonly as a Priority Encoder or P-encoder for short.

If a multiplexer or encoder has N output lines, then it has $2^{\mathrm{N}}$ input lines. A common example of a decoder/demultiplexer IC is the 74LS148, which is a Low-Power Schottky TTL device that has 8 input lines and 3 output lines. The 74LS148 is a priority encoder, which means that if more than one of its inputs are active, then the active input line with the highest binary weight will be given priority, and the output of the encoder will depend on this prioritized input. Table 7.4 shows the truth table for the 74LS148. Note that E0 and GS are output pins while E1 is a control pin (input).

Priority encoders are available in standard IC form and the TTL 74LS148 is an 8-to-3 bit priority encoder which has eight active LOW (logic "0") inputs and provides a 3-bit code of the highest ranked input at its output. Priority encoders output the highest order input first for example, if input lines "D2", "D3" and "D5" are applied simultaneously the output code would be for input "D5" ("101") as this has the highest order out of the 3 inputs. Once input "D5" had been removed the next highest output code would be for input "D3" ("011"), and so on.


Fig 7.12 Pin Diagram of 74148

The IC $74 \times x 148$ (fig 12) is an 8 -input priority encoder. It accepts data from eight active low inputs and provides a binary representation on the three active low outputs. A priority is assigned to each input so that when two or more inputs are simultaneously active, the input with the highest priority represented on the output. Input D0 has the least priority and input D7 has highest priority.

The truth table for IC 74138, 8-to-3 bit priority encoder is given as table 7.4:

| E1 | D 7 | D 6 | D 5 | D 4 | D 3 | D 2 | D 1 | D 0 | A 2 | A 1 | A 0 | E 0 | GS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | X | X | X | X | X | X | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $X$ | X | X | X | X | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $X$ | $X$ | $X$ | $X$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $X$ | $X$ | $X$ | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $X$ | $X$ | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | $X$ | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

Table 7.4 Truth Table of 74148

## MULTIPLEXERS AND THEIR APPLICATIONS:

A multiplexer (or mux) is a device that selects one of several analog or digital input signals and forwards the selected input into a single line. A multiplexer of $2^{n}$ inputs has $n$ select lines, which are used to select which input line to send to the output (fig 7.13). Multiplexers are mainly used to increase the amount of data that can be sent over the network within a certain amount of time and bandwidth. A multiplexer is also called a data selector. An electronic multiplexer can be considered as a multiple-input, single-output switch.

The following table 7.5 shows different multiplexer Ics

|  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |
| 1 | 74157 | Quad $2: 1$ mux. | Output State |
| 2 | 74158 | Quad $2: 1$ mux. | Output same as input given |
| 3 | 74153 | Dual $4: 1$ mux. | Output is inverted input |
| 4 | 74352 | Dual $4: 1$ mux. | Output same as input |
| 5 | 74151 A | $8: 1$ mux. | Output is inverted input |
| 6 | 74151 | $8: 1$ mux. | Both outputs available (i.e., complementary <br> outputs) |
| 7 | 74150 | $16: 1$ mux. | Output is inverted input |

Table 7.5 Multiplexer Ics

## THE 74XX151 (8 TO 1 MULTIPLEXER)

The $74 \times x 151$ (fig 7.14) is a 8 -to-1 multiplexer. It has eight inputs. It provides two outputs, one is the active HIGH, the other is active LOW. It contain 3 select inputs C, B and A which select one of the eight inputs. The $74 \times x 151$ is provided with active low enable input.


Fig 7.13 Logic symbol of multiplexer

## 74x151 8-to-1 mux



Fig 7.14: 74151 8-to-1 Mux

| Inputs |  |  |  | Outputs |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| EN_L | C | B | A | Y | Y_L |
| 1 | x | x | x | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DO | D0' |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | D1 | D1 ${ }^{\prime}$ |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | D2 | D2 ${ }^{\prime}$ |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | D3 | D3' |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | D4 | D4 ${ }^{\prime}$ |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | D5 | D5 ${ }^{\prime}$ |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | D6 | D6 ${ }^{\prime}$ |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | D7 | D7 ${ }^{\prime}$ |

Table 7.6: Truth table for 74151 mux

## THE 74XX157 QUAD 2-INPUT MULTIPLEXER:



Fig 7.15 Logic symbol and logic circuit diagram of IC 74157

The IC $74 \times x 157$ shown in fig 7.15 is a quad 2 -input multiplexer which selects four bits of data from two sources under the control of a common select input( $S$ ), the Enable input( $E^{\prime}$ ) is active LOW. When E is HIGH, all of the outputs (Y) are forced low regardless of all other input conditions. The truth table is shown in table 7.7

| Inputs |  |  | Outputs |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G_ | $S$ |  | $1 Y$ | $2 Y$ | $3 Y$ | $4 Y$ |
| 1 | $X$ |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 |  | $1 A$ | $2 A$ | $3 A$ | $4 A$ |
| 0 | 1 |  | $1 B$ | $2 B$ | $3 B$ | $4 B$ |

Table 7.7: Truth table of 74157

## PARALLEL BINARY ADDER (IC 74LS83/74LS283):

4-bit parallel adders that are available in IC form are the 74LS83A and the 74LS283 low power Schottky TIL devices. The 74LS83A and the 74LS283 are function- Schottky TIL devices. The 74LS83A and the 74LS283 are functionally identical to each other but not pin compatible; that is, the pin numbers for the inputs and outputs are different due to different power and ground pin connections. For the 74LS283, Vccand ground is pin 8, which is a more standard configuration. Pin diagrams symbols for both of these devices are shown, with symbols, in Fig7.16 and fig 7.17. The functional truth tables are shown in tables 7.8 and 7.9.


Fig 7.16Pin diagram of 74LS83A

## Functional discription of 74LS83A

The LS83A adds two 4-bit binary words (A plus B) plus the incoming carry. The binary sum appears on the sum outputs (R1-R4) and outgoing carry (C4) outputs.

Where: $(+)=$ plus
Due to the symmetry of the binary add function the LS83A can be used with either all inputs and outputs active HIGH (positive logic) or with all inputs and outputs active LOW (negative logic). Note that with active HIGH Inputs, Carry Input cannot be left open, but must be held LOW when no carry in is intended.

For example:

|  | $\mathrm{C}_{0}$ | $\mathrm{A}_{1}$ | $\mathrm{A}_{2}$ | $\mathrm{A}_{3}$ | $\mathrm{A}_{4}$ | B1 | B2 | B3 | B4 | $\Sigma_{1}$ | $\Sigma_{2}$ | $\Sigma 3$ | $\Sigma 4$ | $\mathrm{C}_{4}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Logic Levels | L | L | H | L | H | H | L | L | H | H | H | L | L | H |
| Active HIGH | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Active LOW | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

FUNCTIONAL TRUTH TABLE

| $\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{n}-1)$ | $\mathrm{A}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | $\mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | $\Sigma_{\mathrm{n}}$ | $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{n}}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| L | L | L | L | L |
| L | L | H | H | L |
| L | H | L | H | L |
| L | H | H | L | H |
| H | L | L | H | L |
| H | L | H | L | H |
| H | H | L | L | H |
| H | H | H | H | H |

$\mathrm{C}_{1}-\mathrm{C}_{3}$ are generated internally
$\mathrm{C}_{0}$ - is an external input
$\mathrm{C}_{4}$ - is an output generated internally

Table 7.8 Functional truth table of 74LS83


Table 7.9 Functional truth table of 74283

## PARALLEL BINARY SUBTRACTOR USING 2'S COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

The problem of subtraction gets converted into that of addition if l's and 2's complement representation are used for representing negative numbers. The algorithm for a subtractor using adder is given in Fig.7.18a.The two numbers A and $B$ can be of the same sign or of opposite signs. If the two numbers are of unlike sign, we may come across the problem of overflow or underflow. Overflow occurs when the subtraction operation produces a number larger than the largest possible number which can be represented by n-bits. On the other hand, underflow occurs when the result produced is smaller than the smallest number which can be represented by $n$ bits.The overflow and underflow logic is illustrated in Fig.7.18. The subtractor circuit is given in Fig. 7.18b. The reader can verify the operation of this circuit. If overflow or underflow occurs then the result is wrong. This circuit can be converted into an ADDER/SUBTRACTOR circuit with ADD/SUB control.


Fig 7.18a: Algorithm to perform subtraction using adder


Fig 7.18b: Logic circuit for performing subtraction using adder


Fig 7.19 Logic symbol of IC 7485
Another common and very useful combinational logic circuit is that of the Digital Comparator circuit. Digital or Binary Comparators are made up from standard AND, NOR and NOT gates that compare the digital signals present at their input terminals and produce an output depending upon the condition of those inputs. For example, along with being able to add and subtract binary numbers we need to be able to compare them and determine whether the value of input A is greater than, smaller than or equal to the value at input B etc. The digital comparator accomplishes this using several logic gates that operate on the principles of Boolean algebra. There are two main types of digital comparator available and these are.

- Identity Comparator - is a digital comparator that has only one output terminal for when $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ either "HIGH" $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}=1$ or "LOW" $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}=0$
- Magnitude Comparator - is a type of digital comparator that has three output terminals, one each for equality, $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ greater than, $\mathrm{A}>\mathrm{B}$ and less than $\mathrm{A}<\mathrm{B}$

The purpose of a Digital Comparator is to compare a set of variables or unknown numbers, for example A (A1, A2, A3, .... An, etc) against that of a constant or unknown value such as $\mathrm{B}(\mathrm{B} 1, \mathrm{~B} 2, \mathrm{~B} 3, \mathrm{Bn}$, etc) and produce an output condition or flag depending upon the result of the comparison. For example, a magnitude comparator of two 1-bits, (A and B) inputs would produce the following three output conditions when compared to each other.

$$
A>B, \quad A=B, \quad A<B
$$

Which means: $A$ is greater than $B, A$ is equal to $B$, and $A$ is less than $A$
This is useful if we want to compare two variables and want to produce an output when any of the above three conditions are achieved. For example, produce an output from a counter when a certain count number is reached. Consider the simple 1-bit comparator in the fig 7.20 below.


Fig 7.20: Logic circuit of 1-bit comparator
Then the operation of a 1-bit digital comparator is given in the following Truth Table 7.10

| Inputs |  | Outputs |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B | A | $\mathrm{A}>\mathrm{B}$ | $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ | $\mathrm{A}<\mathrm{B}$ |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

Table 7.10: Truth Table of 1-bit comparator
You may notice two distinct features about the comparator from the above truth table. Firstly, the circuit does not distinguish between either two " 0 " or two " 1 "'s as an output $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ is produced when they are both equal, either $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}=" 0$ " or $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}=" 1 "$. Secondly, the output condition for $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ resembles that of a commonly available logic gate, the Exclusive-NOR or Ex-NOR function (equivalence) on each of the n -bits giving: $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{A} \bigoplus \mathrm{B}$

Digital comparators actually use Exclusive-NOR gates within their design for comparing their respective pairs of bits. When we are comparing two binary or BCD values or variables against each other, we are comparing the "magnitude" of these values, a logic "0" against a logic "1" which is where the term Magnitude Comparator comes from.

As well as comparing individual bits, we can design larger bit comparators by cascading together n of these and produce a n -bit comparator just as we did for the n -bit adder in the previous tutorial. Multi-bit comparators can be constructed to compare whole binary or BCD words to produce an output if one word is larger, equal to or less than the other. A very good example of this is the 4-bit magnitude comparator. Here, two 4-bit words ("nibbles") are compared to each other to produce the relevant output with one word connected to inputs A and the other to be compared against connected to input B as shown below in fig 7.21.


Fig 7.21: 4-bit magnitude comparator
Some commercially available digital comparators such as the TTL 7485 or CMOS 4063 4-bit magnitude comparator have additional input terminals that allow more individual comparators to be "cascaded" together to compare words larger than 4-bits with magnitude comparators of " n "-bits being produced. These cascading inputs are connected directly to the corresponding outputs of the previous comparator as shown to compare 8,16 or even 32 -bit words.

## 8-bit Word Comparator



Fig 4.22: Two 4-bit comparators used to compare 8-bit number

When comparing large binary or BCD numbers like the example above, to save time the comparator starts by comparing the highest-order bit (MSB) first. If equality exists, $\mathrm{A}=\mathrm{B}$ then it compares the next lowest bit and so on until it reaches the lowest-order bit, (LSB). If equality
still exists then the two numbers are defined as being equal. If inequality is found, either $\mathrm{A}>\mathrm{B}$ or $\mathrm{A}<\mathrm{B}$ the relationship between the two numbers is determined and the comparison between any additional lower order bits stops. Digital Comparatoris used widely in Analogue-to-Digital converters, (ADC) and Arithmetic Logic Units, (ALU) to perform a variety of arithmetic operations.

## SEQUENTIAL LOGIC BASICS

In digital circuit theory, sequential logic is a type of logic circuit whose output depends not only on the present value of its input signals but on the past history of its inputs. This is in contrast to combinational logic, whose output is a function of only the present input. That is, sequential logic has state (memory) while combinational logic does not. Or, in other words, sequential logic is combinational logic with memory as shown in the block diagram of fig8.1.


Fig 8.1 Sequential Logic Block diagram:
Sequential logic is used to construct finite state machines, a basic building block in all digital circuitry, as well as memory circuits and other devices. Virtually all circuits in practical digital devices are a mixture of combinational and sequential logic.

Digital sequential logic circuits are divided into synchronous and asynchronous types. In synchronous sequential circuits, the state of the device changes only at discrete times in response to a clock signal. In asynchronous circuits the state of the device can change at any time in response to changing inputs.

The word "Sequential" means that things happen in a "sequence", one after another and in Sequential Logic circuits, the actual clock signal determines when things will happen next. Simple sequential logic circuits can be constructed from standard Bistable circuits such as Flipflops, Latches and Counters and which themselves can be made by simply connecting together universal NAND Gates and/or NOR Gates in a particular combinational way to produce the required sequential circuit.

## SR FLIP-FLOP

The SR flip-flop can be considered as one of the most basic sequential logic circuit possible. The flip-flop is basically a one-bit memory bistable device that has two inputs, one which will "SET" the device (meaning the output = "1"), and is labelledS and another which will "RESET" the device (meaning the output = " 0 "), labelledR. Then the SR description stands for set/reset. The reset input resets the flip-flop back to its original state with an output Q that will be either at a logic level " 1 " or logic " 0 " depending upon this set/reset condition.

A basic NAND gate SR flip-flop circuit provides feedback from both of its outputs back to its inputs and is commonly used in memory circuits to store data bits. Then the SR flip-flop actually has three inputs, Set, Reset and its current output Q relating to its current state or history. The term "Flip-flop" relates to the actual operation of the device, as it can be "flipped" into one logic state or "flopped" back into another.

## The NAND Gate SR Flip-Flop

The simplest way to make any basic one-bit set/reset SR flip-flop is to connect together a pair of cross-coupled 2-input NAND gates to form a set-reset bistable or an active LOW SR NAND Gate Latch, so that there is feedback from each output to one of the other NAND gate inputs. This device consists of two inputs, one called the set, S and the other called the reset, R with two corresponding outputs Q and its inverse or complement Q as shown in fig 8.2.


Fig 8.2 Nand gate SR flipflop

The Set State

Consider the circuit shown in the fig 2. If the input R is at logic level " 0 " $(\mathrm{R}=0)$ and input $S$ is at logic level "1" $(S=1)$, the NAND gate $Y$ has at least one of its inputs at logic " 0 " therefore, its output Q must be at a logic level "1" (NAND Gate principles). Output Q is also fed back to input " A " and so both inputs to NAND gate $X$ are at logic level "1", and therefore its output Q must be at logic level " 0 ". Again NAND gate principals. If the reset input R changes state, and goes HIGH to logic " 1 " with S remaining HIGH also at logic level " 1 ", NAND gate $Y$ inputs are now $\mathrm{R}=" 1$ " and $\mathrm{B}=" 0$ ". Since one of its inputs is still at logic level " 0 " the output at Q still remains HIGH at logic level "1" and there is no change of state. Therefore, the flip-flop circuit is said to be "Latched" or "Set" with $\mathrm{Q}=\mathrm{"} 1$ " and $\mathrm{Q}=" 0$ ".

## Reset State

In this second stable state, Q is at logic level " 0 ", not $\mathrm{Q}=" 0$ " its inverse output Q is at logic level " 1 ", $\mathrm{Q}=" 1$ ", and is given by $\mathrm{R}=" 1$ " and $\mathrm{S}=" 0$ ". As gate $X$ has one of its inputs at logic " 0 " its output Q must equal logic level "1" (again NAND gate principles). Output Q is fed back to input "B", so both inputs to NAND gate $Y$ are at logic " 1 ", therefore, $\mathrm{Q}=" 0$ ". If the set input, S now changes state to logic "1" with input R remaining at logic "1", output Q still remains LOW at logic level " 0 " and there is no change of state. Therefore, the flip-flop circuits "Reset" state has been latched. We can define this "set/reset" action in the following truth table 8.1.

| State | S | R | Q | Q | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Set | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | Set Q » 1 |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | no change |
| Reset | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | Reset Q » 0 |
|  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | no change |

Table 8.1: Truth Table for this Set-Reset Function
It can be seen that when both inputs $S=" 1 "$ and $R=" 1 "$ the outputs $Q$ and $Q$ can be at either logic level " 1 " or " 0 ", depending upon the state of inputs Sor R BEFORE this input condition existed. However, input state $R=" 0$ " and $S=" 0 "$ is an undesirable or invalid condition and must be avoided because this will give both outputs Q and Q to be at logic level "1" at the same time and we would normally want Q to be the inverse of Q . However, if the two inputs are now switched HIGH again after this condition to logic "1", both the outputs will go LOW resulting in the flip-flop becoming unstable and switch to an unknown data state based upon the unbalance. This unbalance can cause one of the outputs to switch faster than the other resulting in the flip-flop switching to one state or the other which may not be the required state and data corruption will exist. This unstable condition is known as its Meta-stable state.

Then, a bistable SR flip-flop or SR latch is activated or set by a logic "1" applied to its S input and deactivated or reset by a logic "1" applied to its R. The SR flip-flop is said to be in an
"invalid" condition (Meta-stable) if both the set and reset inputs are activated simultaneously.

As well as using NAND gates, it is also possible to construct simple one-bit SR Flipflops using two cross-coupled NOR gates connected in the same configuration. The circuit will


Fig 8.3 Nor gate SR flipflop
work in a similar way to the NAND gate circuit above, except that the inputs are active HIGH and the invalid condition exists when both its inputs are at logic level "1" and this is shown below in fig 8.3.

## Gated or Clocked SR Flip-Flop

It is sometimes desirable in sequential logic circuits to have a bistable SR flip-flop that only changes state when certain conditions are met regardless of the condition of either the Set or the Reset inputs. By connecting a 2-input AND gate in series with each input terminal of the SR Flip-flop a Gated SR Flip-flop can be created. This extra conditional input is called an "Enable" input and is given the prefix of "EN". The addition of this input means that the output at Q only changes state when it is HIGH and can therefore be used as a clock (CLK) input making it levelsensitive as shown in fig 4.


Fig 8.4 Clocked SR flipflop

When the Enable input "EN" is at logic level "0", the outputs of the two AND gates are also at logic level " 0 ", (AND Gate principles) regardless of the condition of the two inputs S and R , latching the two outputs Q and Q into their last known state. When the enable input "EN" changes to logic level "1" the circuit responds as a normal SR bistable flip-flop with the two AND gates becoming transparent to the Set and Reset signals. This enable input can also be connected to a clock timing signal adding clock synchronisation to the flip-flop creating what is sometimes called a "Clocked SR Flip-flop". So a Gated Bistable SR Flip-flop operates as a
standard bistable latch but the outputs are only activated when a logic " 1 " is applied to its EN input and deactivated by a logic " 0 ".

## JK FLIP-FLOP

A basic gated SR NAND flip-flop suffers from two basic problems: number one, the $\mathrm{S}=0$ and $\mathrm{R}=0$ condition or $\mathrm{S}=\mathrm{R}=0$ must always be avoided, and number two, if S or R change state while the enable input is high the correct latching action may not occur. Then to overcome these two fundamental design problems with the SR flip-flop, the JK flip-Flop was developed.

The JK flip-Flop is the most widely used of all the flip-flop designs and is considered to be a universal flip-flop circuit. The sequential operation of the JK flip-flop is exactly the same as for the previous SR flip-flop with the same "set" and "reset" inputs. The difference this time is that the JK flip-flop has no invalid or forbidden input states of the SR Latch (when S and R are both 1).

The JK flip-flop is basically a gated SR flip-flop with the addition of a clock input circuitry that prevents the illegal or invalid output condition that can occur when both inputs $S$ and R are equal to logic level " 1 ". Due to this additional clocked input, a JK flip-flop has four possible input combinations, "logic 1", "logic 0", "no change" and "toggle". The symbol for a JK flip-flop is similar to that of an SR Bistable Latch except for the addition of a clock input.


Fig 8.5 The Basic JK Flip-flop

The basic JK flip flop is shown in the fig 8.5. Both the S and the R inputs of the previous SR bistable have now been replaced by two inputs called the J and K inputs, respectively after its inventor Jack Kilby. Then this equates to: $\mathrm{J}=\mathrm{S}$ and $\mathrm{K}=\mathrm{R}$.

The two 2-input AND gates of the gated SR bistable have now been replaced by two 3-

| same as for the SR Latch | J | K | Q | Q | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | Memory no change |
|  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
|  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | Reset Q > 0 |
|  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
|  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | Set Q > 1 |
|  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| toggle action | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | Toggle |
|  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |  |

Table 8.2:Truth Table for the JK Function
input NAND gates with the third input of each gate connected to the outputs at Q and Q . This cross coupling of the SR flip-flop allows the previously invalid condition of $S=11$ " and $R=" 1 "$ state to be used to produce a "toggle action" as the two inputs are now interlocked. If the circuit is "SET" the J input is inhibited by the " 0 " status of Q through the lower NAND gate. If the circuit is "RESET" the K input is inhibited by the "0" status of Q through the upper NAND gate As Q and Q are always different we can use them to control the input. When both inputs J and K are equal to logic " 1 ", the JK flip-flop toggles as shown in the following truth table 8.2.Then the JK flip-flop is basically an SR flip-flop with feedback which enables only one of its two input terminals, either SET or RESET to be active at any one time thereby eliminating the invalid condition seen previously in the SR flip-flop circuit. Also when both the J and the K inputs are at logic level "1" at the same time, and the clock input is pulsed either "HIGH", the circuit will "toggle" from its SET state to a RESET state, or visa-versa. This results in the JK flip-flop acting more like a T-type toggle flip-flop when both terminals are HIGH.

Although this circuit is an improvement on the clocked SR flip-flop it still suffers from timing problems called "race" if the output Q changes state before the timing pulse of the clock input has time to go "OFF". To avoid this the timing pulse period (T) must be kept as short as possible (high frequency). As this is sometimes not possible with modern TTL IC's the much improved Master-Slave JK Flip-flop was developed. This eliminates all the timing problems by using two SR flip-flops connected together in series, one for the "Master" circuit, which triggers on the leading edge of the clock pulse and the other, the "Slave" circuit, which triggers on the falling edge of the clock pulse. This results in the two sections, the master section and the slave section being enabled during opposite half-cycles of the clock signal.

## Dual JK Flip-flop 74LS73

The 74LS73 is a Dual JK flip-flop IC shown in fig 8.6, which contains two individual JK
type bistable's within a single chip enabling single or master-slave toggle flip-flops to be made.

Other JK flip-flop IC's include the 74LS107 Dual JK flip-flop with clear, the 74LS109 Dual positive-edge triggered JK flip-flop and the 74LS112 Dual negative-edge triggered flip-flop with


Fig 8.6 Dual JK Flip-flop 74LS73
both preset and clear inputs

## The Master-Slave JK Flip-flop

The Master-Slave Flip-Flop is basically two gated SR flip-flops connected together in a series configuration with the slave having an inverted clock pulse. The outputs from Q and Q from the "Slave" flip-flop are fed back to the inputs of the "Master" with the outputs of the "Master" flip-flop being connected to the two inputs of the "Slave" flip-flop. This feedback configuration from the slave's output to the master's input gives the characteristic toggle of the JK flip-flop as shown fig 8.7.

The input signals J and K are connected to the gated "master" SR flip-flop which "locks" the input condition while the clock (Clk) input is "HIGH" at logic level "1". As the clock input of the "slave" flip-flop is the inverse (complement) of the "master" clock input, the "slave" SR flipflop does not toggle. The outputs from the "master" flip-flop are only "seen" by the gated "slave" flip-flop when the clock input goes "LOW" to logic level "0". When the clock is "LOW", the outputs from the "master" flip-flop are latched and any additional changes to its inputs are ignored. The gated "slave" flip-flop now responds to the state of its inputs passed over by the "master" section. Then on the "Low-to-High" transition of the clock pulse the inputs of the "master" flip-flop are fed through to the gated inputs of the "slave" flip-flop and on the "High-toLow" transition the same inputs are reflected on the output of the "slave" making this type of flip-flop edge or pulse-triggered.


Fig 8.7 The Master-Slave JK Flip-Flop

Then, the circuit accepts input data when the clock signal is "HIGH", and passes the data to the output on the falling-edge of the clock signal. In other words, the Master-Slave JK Flip-flop is a "Synchronous" device as it only passes data with the timing of the clock signal.

## D FLIP-FLOP

One of the main disadvantages of the basic $S R$ NAND Gatebistable circuit is that the indeterminate input condition of "SET" = logic " 0 " and "RESET" = logic " 0 " is forbidden. This state will force both outputs to be at logic " 1 ", over-riding the feedback latching action and whichever input goes to logic level "1" first will lose control, while the other input still at logic " 0 " controls the resulting state of the latch. In order to prevent this from happening an inverter can be connected between the "SET" and the "RESET" inputs to produce another type of flipflop circuit called a Data Latch, Delay flip-flop, D-type Bistable or simply a D-type flip-flop as it is more generally called.


Symbol


Circuit

Fig 8.8 Symbol and Logic circuit of D flip-flop
The D flip-flop is by far the most important of the clocked flip-flops as it ensures that ensures that inputs $S$ and R are never equal to one at the same time. D-type flip-flops are constructed from a gated SR flip-flop with an inverter added between the S and the R inputs to allow for a single D (data) input. This single data input D is used in place of the "set" signal, and the inverter is used to generate the complementary "reset" input thereby making a level-sensitive D-type flip-flop from a level-sensitive RS-latch as now $\mathrm{S}=\mathrm{D}$ and $\mathrm{R}=$ not D as shown in fig 8.8.

We remember that a simple SR flip-flop requires two inputs, one to "SET" the output and one to "RESET" the output. By connecting an inverter (NOT gate) to the SR flip-flop we can "SET" and "RESET" the flip-flop using just one input as now the two input signals are complements of each other. This complement avoids the ambiguity inherent in the SR latch when both inputs are LOW, since that state is no longer possible.

Thus the single input is called the "DATA" input. If this data input is HIGH the flip-flop would be "SET" and when it is LOW the flip-flop would be "RESET". However, this would be rather pointless since the flip-flop's output would always change on every data input. To avoid this an additional input called the "CLOCK" or "ENABLE" input is used to isolate the data input from the flip-flop after the desired data has been stored. The effect is that D is only copied to the output Q when the clock is active. This then forms the basis of a $\mathbf{D}$ flip-flop.

| Clk | D | Q | Q | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\downarrow » 0$ | X | Q | Q | Memory <br> no change |
| $\uparrow » 1$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | Reset $\mathrm{Q} » 0$ |
| $\uparrow » 1$ | 1 | 1 | 0 | Set $\mathrm{Q} » 1$ |

Table 8.3: Truth Table for the D Flip-flop
The D flip-flop will store and output whatever logic level is applied to its data terminal so long as the clock input is HIGH. Once the clock input goes LOW the "set" and "reset" inputs of the flip-flop are both held at logic level "1" so it will not change state and store whatever data was present on its output before the clock transition occurred. In other words the output is "latched" at either logic " 0 " or logic " 1 ". The truth table is shown in table 8.3.

## The Master-Slave D Flip-flop

The basic D flip-flop can be improved further by adding a second SR flip-flop to its output that is activated on the complementary clock signal to produce a "Master-Slave D flipflop". On the leading edge of the clock signal (LOW-to-HIGH) the first stage, the "master" latches the input condition at D , while the output stage is deactivated. On the trailing edge of the clock signal (HIGH-to-LOW) the second "slave" stage is now activated, latching on to the output from the first master circuit. Then the output stage appears to be triggered on the negative edge of the clock pulse. "Master-Slave D flip-flops" can be constructed by the cascading together of two latches with opposite clock phases as shown in fig 8.9.


Fig 8.9 Master-Slave D flip-flop Circuit

We can see from above that on the leading edge of the clock pulse the master flip-flop will be loading data from the data D input, therefore the master is "ON". With the trailing edge of the clock pulse the slave flip-flop is loading data, i.e. the slave is "ON". Then there will always be one flip-flop "ON" and the other "OFF" but never both the master and slave "ON" at the same time. Therefore, the output Q acquires the value of D , only when one complete pulse, i.e. $0-1-0$ is applied to the clock input.

There are many different D flip-flop IC's available in both TTL and CMOS packages with the more common being the 74LS74 (fig 8.10) which is a Dual D flip-flop IC, which contains two individual D type bistable's within a single chip enabling single or master-slave toggle flip-flops to be made. Other D flip-flop IC's include the 74LS174 HEX D flip-flop with direct clear input, the 74LS175 Quad D flip-flop with complementary outputs and the 74LS273 Octal D flip-flop containing eight D flip-flops with a clear input in one single package.


Fig 8.10 Dual D flip-flop 74LS74

## APPLICATIONS OF D_FLIPFLOP:

## i)Frequency Division

One main use of a D flip-flop is as a Frequency Divider. If the Q output on a D-type flip-flop is connected directly to the D input giving the device closed loop "feedback", successive clock pulses will make the bistable "toggle" once every two clock cycles.

In the counters tutorials we saw how the Data Latch can be used as a "Binary Divider", or a "Frequency Divider" to produce a "divide-by-2" counter circuit, that is, the output has half the


Fig 8.11 Divide-by-2 Counter
frequency of the clock pulses. By placing a feedback loop around the D flip-flop another type of flip-flop circuit can be constructed called a T-type flip-flop or more commonly a T-type bistable, that can be used as a divide-by-two circuit in binary counters as shown below in fig 8.11.

It can be seen from the frequency waveforms above, that by "feeding back" the output from Q to the input terminal $D$, the output pulses at $Q$ have a frequency that are exactly one half ( $\mathrm{f} / 2$ ) that of the input clock frequency, ( $\mathrm{F}_{\text {in }}$ ). In other words the circuit produces frequency division as it now divides the input frequency by a factor of two (an octave) as $\mathrm{Q}=1$ once every two clock cycles.

## ii) Data Latches

Another useful application of the Data Latch is to hold or remember the data present on its data input, thereby acting as a single bit memory device and IC's such as the TTL 74LS74 or the CMOS 4042 are available in Quad format for this purpose. By connecting together four, 1-bit data latches so that all their clock terminals are connected at the same time a simple "4-bit" Data latch can be made as shown below in fig 8.12.


Fig 8.12: 4-bit Data Latch
The Data Latch is a very useful device in electronic and computer circuits. They can be designed to have very high output impedance at both outputs Q and its inverse or complement output Q to reduce the impedance effect on the connecting circuit when used as a buffer, I/O port, bi-directional bus driver or even a display driver. But a single " 1 -bit" data latch is not very practical to use on its own and instead commercially available IC's incorporate $4,8,10,16$ or even 32 individual data latches into one single IC package, and one such IC device is the 74LS373 Octal D-type transparent latch.

## D flip-flop Summary

The data or $\mathbf{D}$ flip-flop can be built from a pair of back-to-back latches by connecting an inverter between the $S$ and the R inputs to allow for a single D (data) input. The basic D-type flip-flop circuit can be improved further by adding a second SR flip-flop to its output that is activated on the complementary clock signal to produce a "Master-Slave D flip-flop". The difference between a D-type latch and a D flip-flop is that a latch does not have a clock signal, whereas a flip-flop always does. The D flip-flop is an edge triggered device which transfers input data to Q on clock rising or falling edge. Data Latches are Level sensitive devices such as the data latch and the transparent latch.

## THE SHIFT REGISTER

The Shift Register is another type of sequential logic circuit that is used for the storage or transfer of data in the form of binary numbers and then "shifts" the data out once every clock
cycle, hence the name "shift register". It basically consists of several single bit "D-Type Data Latches", one for each bit ( 0 or 1) connected together in a serial or daisy-chain arrangement so that the output from one data latch becomes the input of the next latch and so on. The data bits may be fed in or out of the register serially, i.e. one after the other from either the left or the right direction, or in parallel, i.e. all together. The number of individual data latches required to make up a single Shift Register is determined by the number of bits to be stored with the most common being 8 -bits wide, i.e. eight individual data latches.

The Shift Register is used for data storage or data movement and are used in calculators or computers to store data such as two binary numbers before they are added together, or to convert the data from either a serial to parallel or parallel to serial format. The individual data latches that make up a single shift register are all driven by a common clock ( Clk ) signal making them synchronous devices. Shift register IC's are generally provided with a clear or reset connection so that they can be "SET" or "RESET" as required.

Generally, shift registers operate in one of four different modes with the basic movement of data through a shift register being:

- Serial-in to Parallel-out (SIPO) - the register is loaded with serial data, one bit at a time, with the stored data being available in parallel form.
- Serial-in to Serial-out (SISO) - the data is shifted serially "IN" and "OUT" of the register, one bit at a time in either a left or right direction under clock control.
- Parallel-in to Serial-out (PISO) - the parallel data is loaded into the register simultaneously and is shifted out of the register serially one bit at a time under clock control.
- Parallel-in to Parallel-out (PIPO) - the parallel data is loaded simultaneously into the register, and transferred together to their respective outputs by the same clock pulse.


Fig 8.13 modes of operation of shift register
The effect of data movement from left to right through ashift register can be presented graphically as in fig 8.13:

Also, the directional movement of the data through a shift register can be either to the left, (left shifting) to the right, (right shifting) left-in but right-out, (rotation) or both left and right
shifting within the same register thereby making it bidirectional. It is assumed that all the data shifts to the right, (right shifting).

## SERIAL-IN PARALLEL-OUT (SIPO)



Fig 8.14 SIPO operation
The operation of fig 8.14 is as follows. Let's assume that all the flip-flops (FFA to FFD) have just been RESET (CLEAR input) and that all the outputs $\mathbf{Q}_{\mathbf{A}}$ to $\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{Q}_{\mathbf{D}}$ are at logic level " 0 " i.e, no parallel data output. If a logic " 1 " is connected to the DATA input pin of FFA then on the first clock pulse the output of FFA and therefore the resulting $\mathbf{Q}_{\mathbf{A}}$ will be set HIGH to logic "1" with all the other outputs still remaining LOW at logic "0". Assume now that the DATA input pin of FFA has returned LOW again to logic " 0 " giving us one data pulse or 0-1-0.

The second clock pulse will change the output of FFA to logic "0" and the output of FFB and $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}$ HIGH to logic "1" as its input D has the logic "1" level on it from $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$. The logic "1" has now moved or been "shifted" one place along the register to the right as it is now at $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$. When the third clock pulse arrives this logic "1" value moves to the output of $\mathrm{FFC}\left(\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}}\right)$ and so on until the arrival of the fifth clock pulse which sets all the outputs $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$ back again to logic level " 0 " because the input to FFA has remained constant at logic level " 0 ".

The effect of each clock pulse is to shift the data contents of each stage one place to the right, and this is shown in the following table until the complete data value of $0-0-0-1$ is stored in the register. This data value can now be read directly from the outputs of $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$. Then the data has been converted from a serial data input signal to a parallel data output. The truth table 8.3 and waveforms in fig 8.14a shows the propagation of the logic "1" through the register from left to right as follows.

## Basic Movement of Data through a Shift Register

| Clock Pulse No | QA | QB | QC | QD |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |


| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |


| 4 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

Table 8.3 SIPO Operation


Fig 8.14a wave forms of Serial in parallel out operation
Note that after the fourth clock pulse has ended the 4-bits of data (0-0-0-1) are stored in the register and will remain there provided clocking of the register has stopped. In practice the input data to the register may consist of various combinations of logic " 1 " and " 0 ". Commonly available SIPO IC's include the standard 8-bit 74LS164 or the 74LS594.

## SERIAL-IN SERIAL-OUT (SISO)

This shift register is very similar to the SIPO above, except were before the data was read directly in a parallel form from the outputs $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$, this time the data is allowed to flow straight through the register and out of the other end. Since there is only one output, the DATA leaves the shift register one bit at a time in a serial pattern, hence the name Serial-in to SerialOut Shift Register or SISO.

The SISO shift register (fig 8.15) is one of the simplest of the four configurations as it has only three connections, the serial input (SI) which determines what enters the left hand flip-flop, the serial output (SO) which is taken from the output of the right hand flip-flop and the
sequencing clock signal (Clk).


Fig 8.15: 4- bit SISO
This type of Shift Register also acts as a temporary storage device or as a time delay device for the data, with the amount of time delay being controlled by the number of stages in the register, $4,8,16$ etc or by varying the application of the clock pulses. Commonly available IC's include the 74HC595 8-bit Serial-in/Serial-out Shift Register all with 3-state outputs.

## PARALLEL-IN SERIAL-OUT (PISO)



Fig 8.16: 4-bit Parallel-in to Serial-out Shift Register
The Parallel-in to Serial-out shift register (fig 8.16) acts in the opposite way to the serialin to parallel-out one above. The data is loaded into the register in a parallel format i.e. all the data bits enter their inputs simultaneously, to the parallel input pins $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{D}}$ of the register. The data is then read out sequentially in the normal shift-right mode from the register at Q representing thedata present at $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{D}}$. This data is outputted one bit at a time on each clock cycle in a serial format. It is important to note that with this system a clock pulse is not required to parallel load the register as it is already present, but four clock pulses are required to unload the data.

As this type of shift register converts parallel data, such as an 8-bit data word into serial format, it can be used to multiplex many different input lines into a single serial DATA stream which can be sent directly to a computer or transmitted over a communications line. Commonly available IC's include the 74HC166 8-bit Parallel-in/Serial-out Shift Registers.

## PARALLEL-IN PARALLEL-OUT (PIPO)



Fig 8.17: 4-bit Parallel-in to Parallel-out Shift Register
The final mode of operation is the Parallel-in to Parallel-out Shift Register (fig 8.17). This type of register also acts as a temporary storage device or as a time delay device similar to the SISO configuration above. The data is presented in a parallel format to the parallel input pins $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{D}}$ and then transferred together directly to their respective output pins $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ to $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ by the same clock pulse. Then one clock pulse loads and unloads the register.

The PIPO shift register is the simplest of the four configurations as it has only three connections, the parallel input (PI) which determines what enters the flip-flop, the parallel output $(\mathrm{PO})$ and the sequencing clock signal $(\mathrm{Clk})$.

Similar to the Serial-in to Serial-out shift register, this type of register also acts as a temporary storage device or as a time delay device, with the amount of time delay being varied by the frequency of the clock pulses. Also, in this type of register there are no interconnections between the individual flip-flops since no serial shifting of the data is required.

## UNIVERSAL SHIFT REGISTER

Today, high speed bi-directional "universal" type Shift Registers such as the TTL 74LS 194, 74LS 195 or the CMOS 4035 are available as a 4-bit multi-function devices that can be used in either serial-to-serial, left shifting, right shifting, serial-to-parallel, parallel-to-serial, and as a parallel-to-parallel multifunction data register, hence the name "Universal". These devices can perform any combination of parallel and serial input to output operations but require additional inputs to specify desired function and to pre-load and reset the device. The pin diagram is shown in fig 8.18.


Fig 8.18: 4-bit Universal Shift Register 74LS194

Universal shift registers are very useful digital devices. They can be configured to respond to operations that require some form of temporary memory, delay information such as the SISO or PIPO configuration modes or transfer data from one point to another in either a serial or parallel format. Universal shift registers are frequently used in arithmetic operations to shift data to the left or right for multiplication or division.

## Summary of Shift Registers

- A simple Shift Register can be made using only D-type flip-Flops, one flip-Flop for each data bit.
- The output from each flip-Flop is connected to the D input of the flip-flop at its right.
- Shift registers hold the data in their memory which is moved or "shifted" to their required positions on each clock pulse.
- Each clock pulse shifts the contents of the register one bit position to either the left or the right.
- The data bits can be loaded one bit at a time in a series input (SI) configuration or be loaded simultaneously in a parallel configuration (PI).
- Data may be removed from the register one bit at a time for a series output (SO) or removed all at the same time from a parallel output (PO).
- One application of shift registers is converting between serial and parallel data.
- Shift registers are identified as SIPO, SISO, PISO, PIPO, and universal shift registers.


## APPLICATIONS OF SHIFT REGISTERS

The primary use of shift registers is temporary storage of data and bit manipulations. Some of the common applications are
i. Delay Line

A SISO register may be used to introduce time delay $\Delta t$ in digital signals given by

$$
\Delta \mathrm{t}=\mathrm{N} \times \frac{1}{\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}}
$$

Where N is the number of stages and $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{c}}$ is the clock frequency. Thus, an input pulse train appears at the output delayed by $\Delta \mathrm{t}$. The amount of delay can be controlled by clock frequency or the number of FLIP-FLOPS in the shift register.

## ii. Serial to parallel converter

Data in the serial form can be converted into parallel form by using a SIPO shift register.

## iii. Parallel to Serial Converter

Data in the parallel form can be converted into serial form by using a PISO shift register

## iv. Ring Counter

The synchronous 4 -bitRing Counterin the above fig 8.19 is preset so that exactly one data bit in the register is set to logic " 1 " with all the other bits reset to " 0 ". To achieve this, a "CLEAR" signal is firstly applied to all the flip-flops together in order to "RESET" their outputs to a logic"0" level and then a "PRESET" pulse is applied to the input of the first flip-flop (FFA) before theclock pulses are applied. This then places a single logic " 1 " value into


Fig 8.19: 4-bit Ring Counter
the circuit of the ring counter. On each successive clock pulse, the counter circulates the same data bit between the four flip-flops over and over again around the "ring" every fourth clock cycle. But in order to cycle the data correctly around the counter we must first "load" the counter
with a suitable data pattern as all logic " 0 "'s or all logic " 1 "'s outputted at each clock cycle would make the ring counter invalid.


Fig 8.20a: Rotational Movement of a Ring Counter


Fig 8.20b: Timing diagram

This type of data movement is called "rotation", and like the previous shift register, the effect of the movement of the data bit from left to right through a ring counter can be presented graphically as follows along with its timing diagram shown in fig 8.20(a \& b):

Since the ring counter example shown above has four distinct states, it is also known as a "modulo-4" or "mod-4" counter with each flip-flop output having a frequency value equal to one-fourth or a quarter ( $1 / 4$ ) that of the main clock frequency.

The "MODULO" or "MODULUS" of a counter is the number of states the counter counts or sequences through before repeating itself and a ring counter can be made to output any modulo number. A "mod-n" ring counter will require " $n$ " number of flip-flops connected together to circulate a single data bit providing " n " different output states. For example, a mod- 8 ring counter requires eight flip-flops and a mod-16 ring counter would require sixteen flip-flops. However, as in our example above, only four of the possible sixteen states are used, making ring counters very inefficient in terms of their output state usage.

## v. Johnson Ring Counter

The Johnson Ring Counter or "Twisted Ring Counters", is another shift register with feedback exactly the same as the standard Ring Counter above, except that this time the inverted output Q of the last flip-flop is now connected back to the input D of the first flip-flop as shown below in fig 8.21. The main advantage of this type of ring counter is that it only needs half the number of flip-flops compared to the standard ring counter then its modulo number is halved. So a " n -stage" Johnson counter will circulate a single data bit giving sequence of 2 n different states and can therefore be considered as a "mod-2n counter".


Fig 8.21: 4-bit Johnson Ring Counter
This inversion of Q before it is fed back to input D causes the counter to "count" in a different way. Instead of counting through a fixed set of patterns like the normal ring counter such as for a 4-bit counter, "0001"(1), "0010"(2), "0100"(4), "1000"(8) and repeat, the Johnson counter counts up and then down as the initial logic "1" passes through it to the right replacing the preceding logic " 0 ". A 4-bit Johnson ring counter passes blocks of four logic" 0 " and then four logic "1" thereby producing an 8 -bit pattern. As the inverted output Q is connected to the input D this 8-bit pattern continually repeats. For example, "1000", "1100", "1110", "1111", "0111", "0011", "0001", "0000" and this is demonstrated in the following table 8.4 below.

| Clock Pulse No | FFA | FFB | FFC | FFD |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 6 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 7 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

Table8.4: Truth Table for a 4-bit Johnson Ring Counter

As well as counting or rotating data around a continuous loop, ring counters can also be used to detect or recognize various patterns or number values within a set of data. By connecting simple logic gates such as the $A N D$ or the $O R$ gates to the outputs of the flip-flops the circuit can be made to detect a set number or value. Standard 2, 3 or 4 -stage Johnson ring counters can also be used to divide the frequency of the clock signal by varying their feedback connections and divide-by- 3 or divide-by- 5 outputs are also available.

A 3-stage Johnson Ring Counter can also be used as a 3-phase, 120 degree phase shift square wave generator by connecting to the data outputs at A, B and NOT-B. The standard 5stage Johnson counter such as the commonly available CD4017 is generally used as a synchronous decade counter/divider circuit. The smaller 2-stage circuit is also called a "Quadrature" (sine/cosine) Oscillator/Generator and is used to produce four individual outputs that are each "phase shifted" by 90 degrees with respect to each other, and this is shown below in fig 8.22.

## 2-bit Quadrature Generator



| Output | A | B | C | D |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}$ | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}+\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 2-bit Quadrature Oscillator, Count Sequence |  |  |  |  |

Fig 22: 2-bit Quadrature Generator

As the four outputs, A to D are phase shifted by 90 degrees with regards to each other, they can be used with additional circuitry, to drive a 2-phase full-step stepper motor for position control or the ability to rotate a motor to a particular location as shown in fig 8.23.

## Stepper Motor Control



Fig 23: 2-phase (unipolar) Full-Step Stepper Motor Circuit
The speed of rotation of the Stepper Motor will depend mainly upon the clock frequency and additional circuitry would be require to drive the "power" requirements of the motor. As this section is only intended to give the reader a basic understanding of Johnson Ring Counters and its applications, other good websites explain in more detail the types and drive requirements of stepper motors.

Johnson Ring Counters are available in standard TTL or CMOS IC form, such as the

CD4017 5-Stage, decade Johnson ring counter with 10 active HIGH decoded outputs or the CD4022 4-stage, divide-by-8 Johnson counter with 8 active HIGH decoded outputs.

## RIPPLE OR ASYNCHRONOUS COUNTER

A circuit used for counting the pulses s known as a counter. In previous section 5.7 two types of counters have been discussed. The number of states in an N stage ring counter is N , where as it is 2 N in the case of moebius counter. These counters are referred to as modulo (or divided by N ) and modulo 2 N counters respectively, where modulo indicates the number of states in the counters. When the pulses to be counted are applied to a counter, it goes from state to state and the output of the flip-flops in the counter is decoded to read the count. The circuit comes back to its starting state after counting the N pulses in the case of modulo N counter.

The ring counter and the twisted ring counter do not make efficient use of flip-flops. A flip-flop has two states. Therefore a group of N flip-flops will have two $2^{\mathrm{N}}$ states. This means it is possible to make a modulo $2^{\mathrm{N}}$ counter using N flip-flops. Basically there are two types of such counters:

1. Asynchronous counter (Ripple counter)
2. Synchronous counter

In asynchronous counter, all the flip-flops are not clocked simultaneously, whereas in synchronous counter all the flip-flops are clocked simultaneously.

The available asynchronous ICs are given in the following table 8.5:

| IC No. | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| 7490,74290 | BCD counter |
| 7492 | Divide by 12 counter |
| 7493,74293 | 4-bit binary counter |
| 74176,74196 | Presettable BCD counter |
| 74177,74197 | Presettable 4-bit binary counter |
| 74390 | Dual decade counter |
| 74393 | Dual 4 bit binary counter |
| 74490 | Dual BCD counter |

Table 8.5

## 7490 RIPPLE COUNTER IC

The 7490 is a simple counter (fig 8.24), i.e. it can count from 0 to 9 cyclically in its natural mode. It counts the input pulses and the output is received as a 4-bit binary number through pins $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}, \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}, \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$. The binary output is reset to 0000 at every tenth pulse and count starts from 0 again. A pulse is also generated (probably at pin 9) as it resets its output to
0000. The chip can count up to other maximum numbers and return to zero by changing the modes of 7490 . Thesemodes are set by changing the connection of reset pins $\mathrm{R}_{1}-\mathrm{R}_{4}$.


Fig 8.24: pin diagram of 7490
For example, if either $R_{1} \& R_{2}$ are high or $R_{3} \& R_{4}$ are ground, then it will reset $Q_{A}, Q_{B}, Q_{C}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$ to 0 . If resets $\mathrm{R}_{3} \& \mathrm{R}_{4}$ are high, then the count on $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}, \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{B}}, \mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{C}}$ and $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{D}}$ goes to 1001 .

The other high counts can be generated by connecting two or more 7490 ICs. For example, if two 7490 are connected in a manner that input of one becomes the output of other, the second IC will receive a pulse on every tenth count and will reset at every hundredth count. Thus this system can count from 0 to 99 and give corresponding BCD outputs.


Fig8.25: Functional table of 7490

7490 has an inbuilt divide by two and divide by five counters which can be connected in different fashion by changing the connections. It can be used as a divide by 10 counter by connecting $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ with (clock) input2, grounding all the reset pins, and giving pulse at (clock) input1. This enables the cascade connection of the inbuilt counters. It can also be used as a divide by 6 counter by connecting $Q_{A}$ with input2, grounding $R_{3} \& R_{4}$, and giving pulse at input1.

By connecting $\mathrm{Q}_{\mathrm{A}}$ with input1, 7490 can be used for BCD counting whereas by connecting $Q_{D}$ with input2, it can be used for bi-quinary counting. Bi-quinary is a system for storing decimal digits in a four-bit binary number. The bi-quinary code was used in the abacus. The functional table is shown in fig 8.25.

## SYNCHRONOUS COUNTER

In synchronous counter the clock input is connected to all of the flip-flops so that they are clocked simultaneously.

Available synchronous counter ICs are:

| IC No. | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| 74160 | Decade UP counter |
| 74161 | 4 bit binary UP counter |
| 74162 | Decade UP counter |
| 74163 | 4 bit binary UP counter |
| 74168,74192 | Decade UP/DOWN counter |
| $74169,74191,74193$ | 4 bit binary UP/DOWN counter |
| 74100 | Decade UP/DOWN counter |

## 74161 4-bit BINARY COUNTER

The 74161 IC package contains a single 4 bit synchronous counter circuit with a usercontrollable CLR function (pin 1). Unlike the 74163, the clear is asynchronous, or in other words, it takes place immediately, regardless of the status of the clock input. Multiple units can be cascaded to form larger registering synchronous counters.

The pin diagram and internal structure is shown in fig 8.26. This counter IC can be preloaded to start at any value (decimal $0-15$, binary $0000-1111$ ). Once load sequence is complete, clock impulses received on the CLK pin will perform a counting operation and will be represented on $\mathrm{QA}, \mathrm{QB}, \mathrm{QC}$, and QD .

Applications include, digital counters, frequency counters, digital clocks, program counters,
memory addressors, and others where high performance, glitch-free, counting is required.


Fig 8.26: 74161 IC pin diagram and internal Structure

## 74160 DECADE UP COUNTER



Fig 8.27: pin diagram of 74160

The 74LS160 IC package (fig 8.27), consisting of 16 pins, contains a single 4 bit synchronous counter circuit which can be wired for decade counting mod, without external logic chips. By wiring more than one 74LS160 together (cascading), it is possible to make higher count lengths (powers of ten). For example, two 74LS160s cascaded together would yield a counter capable of decimally counting the range $00-99$. This counter IC can be cleared (set to all zero) at any time, by bringing the clear input to logical zero (ground). During normal operation, such as counting mode, the clear input must be kept high either directly or through a pull up resistor.

